

ESU Award winner
'Best course this year'

Frances Eales
Steve Oakes

speakout

Starter
Students' Book
with ActiveBook



eBOOK



ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

ENGLISH PHONEMES

CONSONANTS

p /pen/ pen	b /bʊk/ book	t /ti:/ tea	d /dei/ day
tʃ /tʃeə/ chair	dʒ /dʒɜ:mən/ German	k /kæt/ cat	g /ɡud/ good
f /fɔ:/ four	v /ˈveri/ very	θ /θɪŋk/ think	ð /ðæt/ that
s /sɪks/ six	z /zu:/ zoo	ʃ /ʃi:/ she	ʒ /ˈtelɪvɪʒən/ television
m /mæn/ man	n /naɪs/ nice	ŋ /θɪŋ/ thing	h /ˈhæpi/ happy
l /lʊk/ look	r /red/ red	w /wɒnt/ want	j /jes/ yes

VOWELS

i: /si:/ see	ɪ /hɪz/ his	ʊ /lʊk/ look	u: /ju:/ you
e /ten/ ten	ə /əˈbaʊt/ about	ɜ: /hɜ:/ her	ɔ: /mɔːnɪŋ/ morning
æ /bæd/ bad	ʌ /bʌt/ but	ɑ: /kɑ:/ car	ɒ /hɒt/ hot

DIPHTHONGS

ɪə /hɪə/ hear	eɪ /neɪm/ name	
ʊə /ˈtuəɪst/ tourist	ɔɪ /bɔɪ/ boy	əʊ /nəʊ/ no
eə /weə/ where	aɪ /maɪ/ my	aʊ /haʊ/ how



Frances Eales
Steve Oakes

speakout

Starter
Students' Book
with ActiveBook

CONTENTS

LESSON	GRAMMAR/FUNCTION	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION	READING
UNIT 1 HELLO page 7 Video podcast Where are you from?				
1.1 Where are you from? page 8	be: I/you	countries	word stress in country names	
1.2 Arrivals page 10	be: he/she/it	jobs	pronunciation of sentences with <i>is</i>	read an article about arrivals at an airport
1.3 How do you spell ... ? page 12	giving personal information	the alphabet	intonation in <i>Wh</i> -questions	
1.4 Around The World page 14		places and adjectives		
UNIT 2 PEOPLE page 17 Video Podcast Who is in your family?				
2.1 Family photos page 18	be: you/we/they	family	pronunciation of <i>you're</i> , <i>we're</i> , <i>they're</i>	
2.2 A family business page 20	possessive adjectives	numbers 11–100	pronunciation of numbers	read about family businesses
2.3 Let's have a break page 22	making suggestions	feelings	intonation in answers	
2.4 Royal Wedding page 24				
REVIEW 1 page 27	be: all forms; possessive adjectives		sounds: /æ/ and /ə/	read messages at a festival
UNIT 3 THINGS page 29 Video podcast What are your favourite things?				
3.1 What's this? page 30	this/that/these/those	objects	/s/ /z/ /ɪz/ in plurals	
3.2 Whose shoes? page 32	possessive 's	clothes and colours		read an article about famous objects
3.3 A coffee, please page 34	ordering in a café	food and drink	intonation in <i>or</i> questions	
3.4 The Market page 36		objects in a market		
UNIT 4 LIFE page 39 Video podcast What do you do for fun?				
4.1 What's different? page 40	present simple: I/you/we/they	verb phrases	intonation in <i>yes/no</i> questions	
4.2 Double lives page 42	present simple: he/she/it	days; time phrases	present simple verb endings: /s/, /z/ and /ɪz/	read an article about avatars
4.3 What time is it? page 44	telling the time	events		
4.4 Rivers page 46				
REVIEW 2 page 49	present simple		sounds: /s/ and /z/	read a description of people's jobs
UNIT 5 ROUTINES page 51 Video Podcast What do you usually do at the weekend?				
5.1 Bad habits page 52	present simple questions: he/she/it	daily routines	linking: <i>does he/she/it</i>	
5.2 Superman and supermodel page 54	adverbs of frequency	food	numbers of syllables; stress in adverbs of frequency	read an article about what a sportsman and a model eat
5.3 When does it open? page 56	asking for information	hotel services	stress in a conversation; intonation to show interest	
5.4 Doctor Who page 58				
LANGUAGE BANK page 118		PHOTO BANK page 138		

LISTENING/DVD	SPEAKING	WRITING
listen to personal introductions	introduce yourself	learn to use capital letters
	ask questions about people and places	
listen to conversations at reception	learn to check spelling; exchange personal information	
 Around The World: watch an extract from a documentary about people around the world	talk about yourself and your country	write a personal introduction
listen to someone talk about family photos	talk about photos of family and friends	learn to use contractions
	check information about people	
listen to people making suggestions	learn to respond to suggestions; make suggestions about where to go	
 The Royal Wedding: William and Catherine: watch an extract from a documentary about a royal wedding	talk about five people in your life	write a description of people in your life
listen to conversations at a festival	ask personal information; talk about your family	
listen to conversations in offices	ask for the names of things in English	
	talk about clothes	link sentences with <i>and</i> and <i>but</i>
listen to conversations in a café	learn to say prices; do a role-play in a café	
 Francesco's Mediterranean Voyage: watch an extract from a travel programme about a market	do a role-play in a market	write a description of a market
listen to people talk about life in the USA.	talk about things you have in common	link sentences with <i>and</i> and <i>because</i> ; write a blog about your life
	find differences in pictures	
listen to conversations about times	tell the time; learn to check times; ask people to come to events	
 Human Planet: Rivers: watch a documentary about rivers	talk about your favourite season	write a forum reply about your favourite season
listen to a conversation about a woman's favourites	talk about your favourite thing; guess the jobs	
listen to conversations about people's bad habits	talk about habits that drive people crazy	
	answer a questionnaire about your daily routines	link sentences with <i>first</i> , <i>then</i> , <i>after that</i> , <i>finally</i>
enquiries in a hotel	learn to show interest; do a role-play at a tourist information desk	
 Doctor Who: watch a drama about a time-travelling doctor	talk about food to take to a desert island	write a forum entry about food to take to a desert island

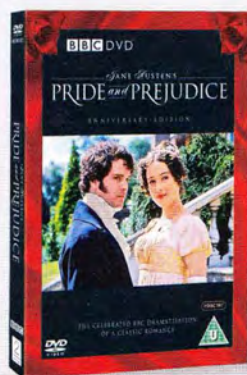
CONTENTS

LESSON	GRAMMAR/FUNCTION	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION	READING
UNIT 6 JOURNEYS page 61 Video podcast How do you get to school or work?				
6.1 No trains page 62	there is/are	places	stress in sentences with there is/are	
6.2 Getting there page 64	a/an, some, a lot of, not any	transport	stress in sentences with a/an, some, a lot of, not any	read a text about transport facts
6.3 Single or return? page 66	buying a ticket	travel	learn to check numbers	
6.4 Rush Hour page 68		transport		
REVIEW 3 page 71	present simple: he/she/it questions; there is/are; a/an, some, a lot of, not any		sounds: /ð/ and /θ/	read a website problem page
UNIT 7 PAST page 73 Video podcast Where were you on your last birthday?				
7.1 Where were you? page 74	past simple: was/were	dates	weak forms of was/were	
7.2 Record breakers page 76	past simple: regular verbs	actions	past simple regular verbs with /t/, /d/ and /ɪd/	read an article about amazing records
7.3 How was it? page 78	giving opinions	adjectives	intonation for positive/ negative feelings	
7.4 The Chilean Miners page 80				
UNIT 8 PLACES page 83 Video podcast Where did you go on holiday last year?				
8.1 Nice place to meet page 84	past simple: irregular verbs	prepositions of place (1)		read about how people met their friends
8.2 Good and bad page 86	past simple: questions	holiday activities	linking in did you	
8.3 Where's the fruit? page 88	giving directions	prepositions of place (2)		
8.4 Guided Tour page 90		holidays		
REVIEW 4 page 93	past simple: was/were; regular and irregular verbs		sounds: /ʌ/ and /ʊ/	read a newspaper report and police statements about a crime
UNIT 9 SHOPPING page 95 Video podcast Do you like shopping?				
9.1 The right gift page 96	like, love, hate + -ing	activities		read about gift-giving around the world
9.2 A waste of money page 98	object pronouns	money	pronouns in connected speech	
9.3 What would you like? page 100	making requests	shopping departments	intonation in polite offers or requests	
9.4 Days That Shook The World page 102		music players		
UNIT 10 PLANS page 105 Video podcast What did you want to be?				
10.1 A new job page 106	can/ can't	collocations	strong and weak forms of can/ can't	read adverts for interesting jobs
10.2 Time for a change page 108	be going to	life changes	pronunciation of going to	
10.3 Hello and goodbye page 110	starting and ending conversations	saying goodbye	stressed words in phrases	
10.4 Miranda page 112		problems		
REVIEW 5 page 115	like, love, hate + -ing; object pronouns; can/ can't; be going to		sounds: /ɑː/ and /ɜː/	do a questionnaire about what you can do in English
LANGUAGE BANK page 118		PHOTO BANK page 138		

LISTENING/DVD	SPEAKING	WRITING
conversations at a station	ask about places; find differences between two pictures	learn to start and end an email
	ask and answer questions about transport; compare cities' transport	
listen to someone buy a bus ticket	learn to check numbers; do a role-play at a train or bus station	
 Visions Of India: Rush Hour: watch an extract from a documentary about India	talk about travel in your country	write a travel forum entry
listen to problems in different situations	role-play problems in different situations	
listen to conversations about New Year 2000	ask where people were in the past	improve your punctuation
	talk about what you/others did in the past	
listen to people giving opinions	give your opinion; learn to show feelings	
 The Chilean Miners' Rescue: watch an extract from a documentary about the Chilean miners' rescue.	do a history quiz	write a history quiz
	talk about first meetings	
listen to a radio programme about holidays	talk about a good holiday	link sentences with <i>so</i> and <i>because</i>
listen to people ask directions in a supermarket	do a role-play in a supermarket; learn to use examples	
 Little Britain Abroad: watch an extract from a comedy about tourists in Spain	tell a bad holiday story	write a story about a bad holiday
listen to people talk about the crime	find differences in two students' stories	
	talk about likes and dislikes; choose an activity gift for a student	
listen to a radio programme about shopping mistakes	talk about shopping	write captions for your photos
listen to someone shopping	learn to use hesitation phrases; choose a birthday present	
 Days That Shook The World: Into The 21st Century: watch an extract from a documentary about the arrival of the MP3 player	describe a possession	write about a favourite possession
listen to job interviews	talk about ability; do a quiz to find the best job for you	
listen to street interviews about people's goals	discuss your plans and goals	learn to check your work
listen to people start and end conversations	learn to respond naturally; do a role-play at a party	
 Miranda: watch an extract from a comedy about a woman who wants to change her life	talk about learning something new	write a magazine interview about learning something new
listen to students talk about learning English	discuss ways of improving your English; play the Speakout Game	

Ex 2A

1



2



3



4



5



6



NUMBERS 1-10

1A Match the words in the box with the numbers.

zero nine three one seven ten four two
eight five six

0	<u>zero</u>	4	_____	8	_____
1	_____	5	_____	9	_____
2	_____	6	_____	10	_____
3	_____	7	_____		

B L.1 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

C L.2 Listen and write the numbers.

D Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a number.
Student B: say the next number.

1 A: five B: six
2 B: zero A: one When were you born?

INTERNATIONAL ENGLISH

2A Match the words in the box with photos 1-6.

DVD 1 phone hotel football bus chocolate

B L.3 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

C Work in pairs. Write five more international words.

→ page 138 **PHOTOBANK** 140

CLASSROOM LANGUAGE

3A L.4 Listen and underline the correct word.

Conversation 1

A: OK, Antonio. What's/Is 'libro' in English?

B: Sorry, I not/don't know.

A: It's 'book'.

B: Can you write/say it, please?

A: Yes ...

Conversation 2

A: OK. Open your books, please.

B: Sorry, I no/don't understand.

A: Open, like this.

B: Which page/number?

A: Page eight.

B: Can you repeat/write that, please?

A: Yes, page eight.

B: Thank you.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Practise the conversations.

→ page 138 **PHOTOBANK**

speakout TIP

Start a phrasebook. Write useful phrases, e.g. Hello, Hi, Good morning, Good afternoon, Good evening, Good night.

UNIT

1

SPEAKING

- › Introduce yourself
- › Ask questions about people
- › Give personal information
- › Check spelling
- › Speak about yourself and your country

LISTENING

- › Listen to people say *hello*
- › Listen to people give personal information
- › Watch a BBC programme about people around the world

READING

- › Read descriptions of people arriving at an airport

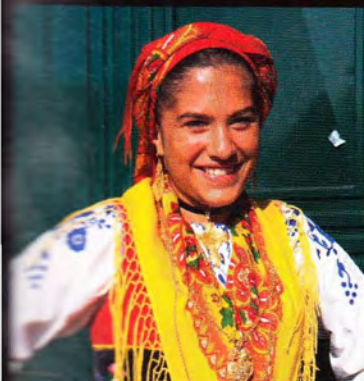
WRITING

- › Learn to use capital letters
- › Write a personal introduction

BBC CONTENT

- 📺 Video podcast: Where are you from?
- 📀 DVD: Around the World

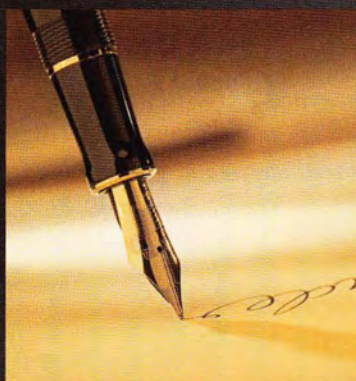
hello



▶ Where are you from? p8



▶ Arrivals p10



▶ How do you spell...? p12



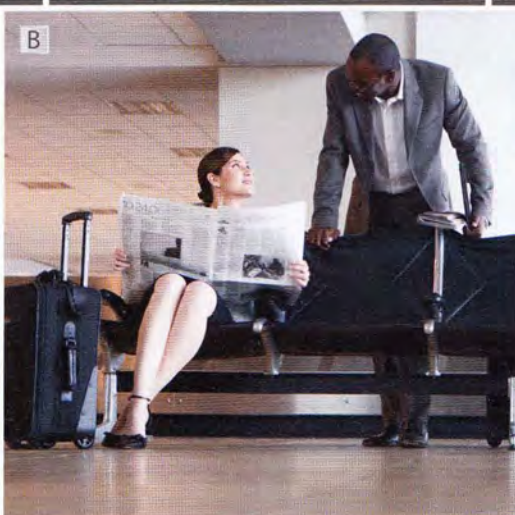
▶ Around The World p14

I.I WHERE ARE YOU FROM?

► **GRAMMAR** | be: I/you

► **VOCABULARY** | countries

► **HOW TO** | introduce yourself



LISTENING

Script 156

1A 1.1 Listen and match conversations 1–4 with photos A–D. 1. What questions did he ask?

1 B 2 3 4

B Listen again and match the person with the country and city.

1	Carmen	Ireland Australia Spain the USA	Dublin
2	Cindy		Cork
3	Tom		Sydney
4	Katie		Melbourne
			Barcelona
			Madrid
			New York
			San Francisco

GRAMMAR be: I/you

2A Complete the tables with 'm and are.

I	'm	Carmen.
		from Spain

Where	_____	you	from?
	_____	you	from Sydney?

Yes,	I	am.
No,		_____ not.

B 1.2 Listen and underline the stressed words.

I'm Carmen.

C Listen again and repeat the sentences.

page 118 **LANGUAGEBANK**

p120 **HW due to extra vocabulary**

PRACTICE

3A Complete the conversations with 'm or are.

Conversation 1

A: Hello, I 'm Janet.

B: Hi, I ² _____ Paul. Nice to meet you.

A: Nice to meet you, too. Where ³ _____ you from?

B: I ⁴ _____ from South Africa.

A: Oh, where in South Africa?

B: From Cape Town.

Conversation 2

A: Hello, I ¹ _____ Kasia.

B: Hi, I ² _____ Peter.

A: Nice to meet you.

B: Nice to meet you, too. Where ³ _____ you from?

A: I ⁴ _____ from Poland.

B: ⁵ _____ you from Warsaw?

A: No, I'm not. I'm from Gdansk.

B 1.3 Listen and check.

C Work in pairs and practise the conversations.

D Work in pairs and talk about your name, country and town/city.

A: Hello, I'm ...

B: Hi, I'm ...

Pronunciation



VOCABULARY countries without the box

4A Match the countries in the box with pictures 1–10.

Brazil 1 Japan Russia Poland China England
Australia Italy the USA Saudi Arabia

B 1.4 Listen and check.

C Listen again and underline the stress. Then listen and repeat.

Brazil

D Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a number. Student B: say the country.

A: four B: Russia

speakout TIP

Write new words in your notebook and underline the stress, e.g. Japan, Italy.

WRITING capital letters ***

5A Underline the capital letters in sentences a)–f).

- I'm Karin.
- I'm Ali Mansour.
- Are you from Saudi Arabia?
- No, I'm from England, from London.
- Are you a student?
- Yes, I am.

B Match rules 1–5 with sentences a–f above.

Rules:

Use capital letters for:

- the name of a person a), b)
- a country
- a city
- I
- The first word in a sentence.

C Find and correct the mistakes with capitals in the chat messages below.

- hi, i'm jeanette, and i'm a teacher in france. Hi,
- hi, i'm makiko. i'm from japan. are you from paris?
- no, i'm from lyon. are you from tokyo?
- yes, i am. i'm a student.

6A Work in pairs. Write a chat message to your partner.

Hi, I'm ...

B Swap messages. Answer the message.

A: Hi, I'm ...

B: Hi, I'm ...

SPEAKING Practice "Meet & greet"

7A Write a country and a city from the country.

England – Manchester

B Work in groups and take turns. Guess the cities.

A: Where are you from?

B: I'm from England.

A: Oh, are you from London?

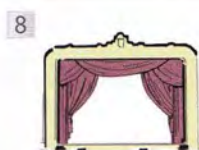
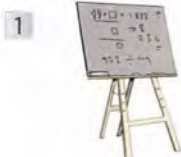
B: No, I'm not.

A: Are you from ... ?

VOCABULARY jobs

1A Write the jobs in the box under pictures 1–8.

teacher actor engineer doctor taxi driver
businessman/businesswoman singer waiter



B 1.5 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

2A Look at the conversation. Underline the correct alternative in the rules.

A: Are you a teacher?

B: No, I'm a student, an English student. Are you an actor?

A: No, I'm a singer, an Italian singer.

Rules:

1 Use *a/an* with words starting with vowels (*a, e, i, o, u*)

2 Use *a/an* with words starting with consonants (*b, c, d ...*)

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a job.

Student B: say *a* or *an*.

A: doctor B: a doctor

C Work with other students. Student A: mime a job.

Other students: guess the job.

B: Are you an engineer?

A: No, I'm not.

C: Are you a doctor?

A: Yes, I am.

▶ page 139 **PHOTOBANK**

p141

Welcome to Heathrow



Ajay Kumar is a computer engineer from Delhi in India. He's in England for an International Conference. 'It isn't my first time in England, but it's my first time in London.'

READING

3A Work in pairs. Look at the photos of people at Heathrow Airport, London. Who is a tourist?

B Read the texts and check your answer.

C Complete the table with the correct information.

name	Ajay			
job		actor/ waiter		
where from?			Mexico	
first time in London?				no



Rosa Pérez López is from Mexico. She's a doctor from Acapulco. She's in London on holiday. 'I'm very happy. It's my first time in England.'



Nicolas Dupont is from France. 'I'm an actor in Paris, but now I'm a waiter here in a café in London. London's a good city for actors.'



Gong Yue is a student from China. 'I'm from Shanghai, but now I'm a business student at the University of London.' 'Is it a good university?' 'Yes, it is!'

GRAMMAR *be: he/she/it*

4A Underline the verb *be* in the sentences.

- 1 Ajay Kumar is a computer engineer.
- 2 She 's a doctor from Acapulco.
- 3 It isn't my first time in England.
- 4 Is it a good university? Yes, it is. (word order)

B Complete the tables.

He	is	from France.
She	's	
It	is not	

_____	he/she/it	from India?
		a doctor?
		your first time here?
Yes,	he/she/it	is.
No,		_____.

Where	_____	he	from?
-------	-------	----	-------

C 1.6 Listen and write sentences 1–5. Then listen and repeat.

→ page 118 **LANGUAGEBANK**

p120 w/exercises

PRACTICE

5A Add 's (*is*) in ten places.

Ellie Turner's from Montreal, Canada. She a teacher at McGill. It a big university in Montreal. She in London for a conference.

Yong-Joon from Korea. He a taxi driver in Seoul, the capital. He in London on holiday. He happy to be here.

Pat a businesswoman from Auckland, New Zealand. She in London on business.

B Write the questions.

- 1 Ellie / Canada?
Is Ellie from Canada?
- 2 she / doctor?
- 3 McGill University / London?
- 4 Yong-Joon / Japan?
- 5 he / London / on holiday?
- 6 Auckland / New Zealand?

C Match answers a)–f) to questions 1–6 above.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| a) No, it isn't. 3 | d) No, he isn't. |
| b) Yes, he is. | e) Yes, it is. |
| c) Yes, she is. | f) No, she isn't. |

D Cover the answers above. Work in pairs and ask and answer questions 1–6.

SPEAKING

6 Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: turn to page 148. Student B: turn to page 152.

1.3 HOW DO YOU SPELL ... ?

► **FUNCTION** | giving personal information

► **VOCABULARY** | the alphabet

► **LEARN TO** | check spelling

VOCABULARY the alphabet

1A ▶ 1.7 Listen and repeat the letters.

Aa Bb Cc
Dd Ee Ff
Gg Hh Ii
Jj Kk Ll
Mm Nn Oo
Pp Qq Rr
Ss Tt Uu
Vv Ww Xx
Yy Zz

B Complete 1–7 with letters from the box. Each group has the same vowel sound.

H Y T E W J M S

- 1 A H _ K
- 2 B C D _ G P _ V
- 3 F L _ N _ X
- 4 I _
- 5 O
- 6 Q U _
- 7 R

C ▶ 1.8 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

D Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 148. Student B: turn to page 152.



FUNCTION giving personal information

2A ▶ 1.9 Listen and match conversations 1–3 with photos A–C.

1 _ 2 _ 3 _

B Listen again and complete the information.

	First name	Family name	Room number
1		Taylor	
2			
3			

3A Complete the form with the words in the box.

First name Email address Nationality Family name Phone

Riverside Gym

MEMBERSHIP FORM

First name: Stefanie

: Young

: American

number: 0532 419

: stef@yahoo.com



Wh?

B Underline the correct alternative. Check your answers in audio script 1.9 on page 154.

- 1 A: What's/are your first name?
B: Stefanie.
- 2 A: How do you spell/say that?
B: S-t-e-f-a-n-i-e.
- 3 A: What's your phone number?
B: It's ow/oh five three two, four one nine.
- 4 A: What's your email address?
B: It's stef at/it yahoo point/dot com. **underscore** _

C **1.10** Listen and tick the correct intonation. Then listen and repeat.

a) What's your email address?

b) What's your email address?

page 118 **LANGUAGEBANK**

4A Write a phone number and an email address.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask questions and write the answers.

A: What's your phone number?

B: It's 382 7492.



LEARN TO check spelling

5A **1.11** Listen to the conversation and underline the stressed letters.

A: And your first name?

B: It's Frances.

A: F-r-a-n-c ... is it i-s?

B: No, e. E as in England. F-r-a-n-c-e-s.

speakout TIP

Some names of letters are difficult, for example Y, J and G, I and E. Write words to help you remember, e.g. Y as in 'yes', J as in 'Japan'. Do this for G, I and E now.

B Work in pairs and correct the spelling.

1 Obdul – Abdul

A: Is it O-b-d-u-l? **B:** No, A. A as in Australia. A-b-d-u-l.

2 Stevin – Steven

3 Cinthia – Cynthia

4 Suzan – Susan

5 Geanette – Jeanette

6 Eves – Yves

SPEAKING

6 Work in groups and take turns. Ask and answer questions to complete the table.

	Student 1	Student 2	Student 3
First name			
Family name			
Nationality			
Phone number			
Email address			



Canada



Santiago, Chile



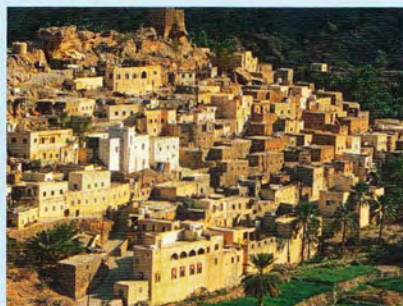
Malaysia



Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia



Helsinki, Finland



Oman

DVD PREVIEW

1A Work in pairs. Find the words in the box in the photos.

city countryside sea beach
mountain river village building

B Work in pairs and take turns. Say an adjective from the box below and a word from the box above.

old new big small beautiful
cold hot

A: an old city B: an old building A: an old ...

2 Read the programme information and underline the countries.

BBC Around The World

In this programme, people from around the world answer the questions: *Who are you? Where are you from? What's your job?* We speak to Kustaa in Finland, Mizna in Oman, Pablo in Chile, Aisha in Malaysia and Eric in Canada.

DVD VIEW

3A Watch the DVD and number the places in the order you see them.

- a) British Columbia, Canada —
- b) Santiago, Chile 1
- c) Helsinki, Finland —
- d) Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia —
- e) Muscat, Oman —

B Work in pairs. Which things from Exercise 1A are in the places?

Chile *building, mountain*

C Watch the DVD again to check your answers.

D Work in pairs and underline the correct alternative. Then watch the DVD again to check your answers.

- 1 Santiago, Chile is *old/old and new*.
- 2 The mountains in Chile are *hot/cold*.
- 3 Eric is a *waiter/driver* on a train.
- 4 Mizna is a *teacher/student* at university.
- 5 She is from a *city/village*.
- 6 In Finland, the countryside is good for *winter/summer* sport.
- 7 Kuala Lumpur is a(n) *old/new* city.
- 8 Aisha is a(n) *shop/office* assistant.

speakout you and your country

4A ▶ 1.12 Listen and answer the questions for Kaitlin. **Check understanding**

Name: Kaitlin

- 1 Where are you from? _____
- 2 Is your city big or small? _____
- 3 Is your city old or new? _____
- 4 What's your job? _____
- 5 Where's your job? _____
- 6 Is English important for you? _____
- 7 Is the countryside beautiful? _____

B Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

Hello or 'dia duit' from Ireland.

I'm/My name's ...

I'm a/an (teacher/engineer) in ...

Dublin/Cannes is a (city/a town/a village) in ...

It's/It isn't very (big/beautiful/hot/small/old/new).

The countryside (in Ireland) is beautiful.

I (really) love it (here).

5A Prepare to talk for thirty seconds. Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4A. Use the key phrases to help.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: give your talk. Student B: listen and ask Student A two questions.

writeback a personal introduction

6A Read the personal introduction for a class blog. Tick the information in the introduction.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| a) name ✓ | e) city |
| b) nationality | f) country |
| c) email address | g) 'Hello' and 'Goodbye'. |
| d) job | h) languages |

aboutme.com

Rita Peterson's blogspot

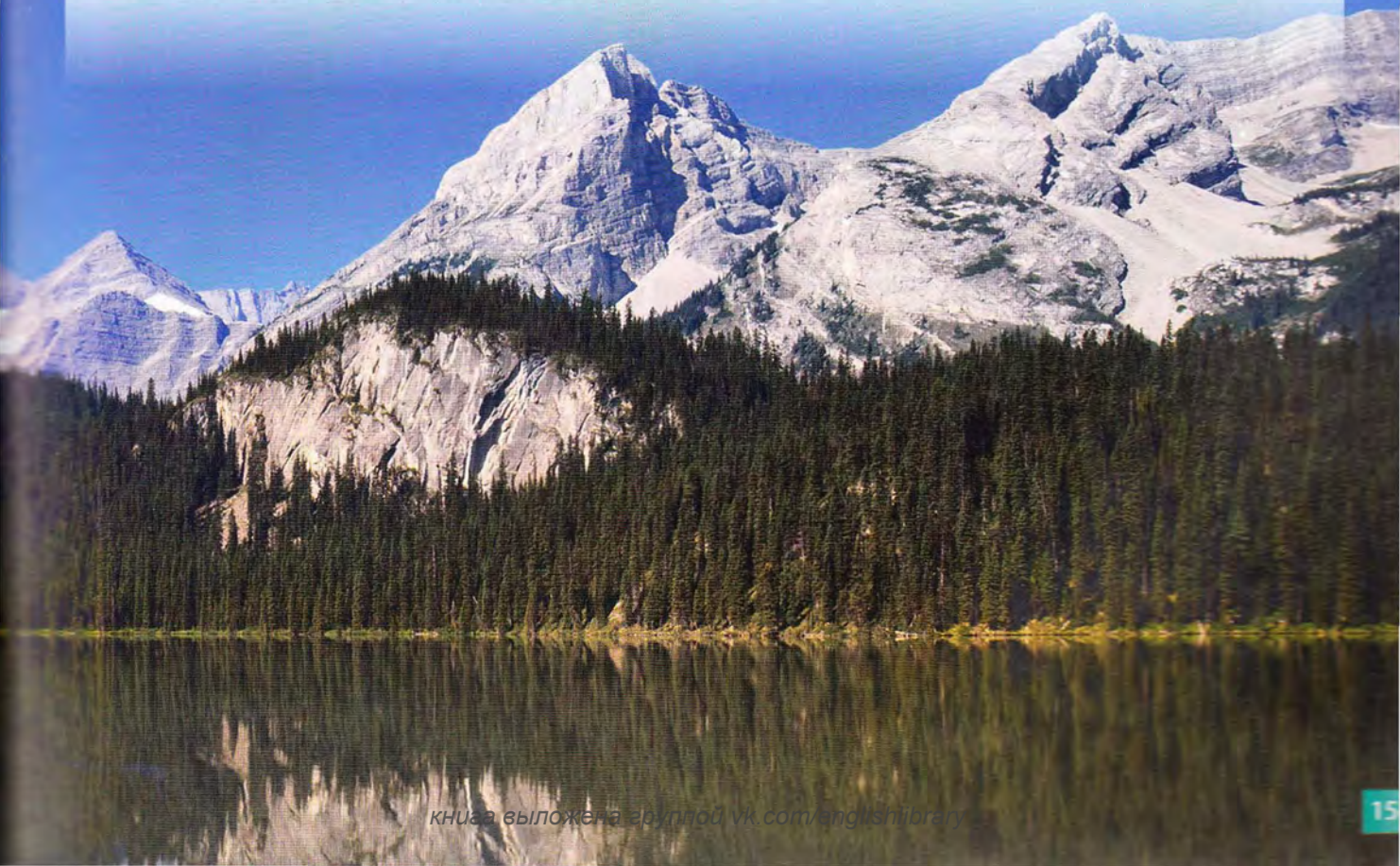
Hello, or 'hallo' in German. I'm Rita Petersen and I'm from Germany. I'm a businesswoman with Volkswagen. I speak German and English in my job.

I'm from Berlin, the capital city of Germany. Berlin is a city with a mix of old and new buildings. The countryside in Germany is beautiful, with mountains and rivers.

5 comments

posted by Rita

B Write a personal introduction. Use the introduction above to help. Write 50–70 words.



BE: I/YOU

1A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

Are 'm I am in you
not six

A: I Are you from Rome?

B: No, I ² not.

A: Are ³ from Seoul?

B: Yes, I ⁴ am.

A: Are you ⁵ Tokyo now?

B: No, I'm ⁶ not.

A: Are you number ⁷ 5?

B: Yes, ⁸ am.

B Work in pairs and take turns.

Student A: choose a sentence from 1–6 below. Student B: ask questions and guess the sentence.

1 I'm from Rome. I'm in London now.

2 I'm from Madrid. I'm in Cork now.

3 I'm from Seoul. I'm in Tokyo now.

4 I'm from Rome. I'm in Cork now.

5 I'm from Madrid. I'm in Tokyo now.

6 I'm from Seoul. I'm in London now.

B: Are you from Madrid?

A: Yes, I am.

B: Are you in Cork?

A: No, I'm not.

B: Number 5!

COUNTRIES

2A Work in pairs. Write the countries.

1 Torino Italy

2 Calcutta I India

3 St. Petersburg R Russia

4 Mecca S Saudi Arabia

5 Xian C China

6 Osaka J Japan

B Write five countries and a city in each country.

China – Beijing

C Work in pairs and take turns.

Student A: say a city. Student B: say the country.

A: Beijing

B: China

JOBS ingilizce ünlüler: a e i o u

3A Add the vowels to the jobs.

1 w _ _ t _ r

2 t _ x _ dr _ v _ r

3 _ ng _ n _ _ r

4 d _ ct _ r

5 _ ct _ r

6 t _ _ ch _ r

7 s _ ng _ r

8 b _ s _ n _ ssw _ m _ n

B Work in groups. Student A: choose your job. Other students: guess the job.

A: Are you a nurse?

B: No, I'm not.

C: Are you a doctor?

B: Yes, I am.

BE: HE/SHE/IT

4A Find and correct the wrong information in the sentences below.

1 Madrid is in Portugal.

No, it isn't. It's in Spain.

2 Vladimir Putin's from Canada.

3 The Eiffel Tower's in Argentina.

4 Jackie Chan's from South Africa.

5 Maria Sharapova's from Poland.

6 Tokyo's in Italy.

7 Queen Elizabeth is from Spain.

8 The Taj Mahal's in Mexico.

9 Barack Obama's from Scotland.

10 Kylie Minogue's from China.

B Work in pairs. Write three false sentences – one about a man, one about a woman, and one about a place.

C Work with other students and take turns. Student A: say a sentence. Other students: say the correct information.

A: Cate Blanchett is from Canada.

B: No, she isn't. She's from Australia.

THE ALPHABET

5A Correct the spelling.

1 fone phone

2 telivison television

3 camra camera

4 univercity university

5 resterant restaurant

6 emial email

7 futbal football

8 choklat chocolate

9 infomashion information

10 intenet internet

B Work in pairs and take turns.

Ask and answer about the spelling.

A: How do you spell 'phone'?

B: p-h-o-n-e.

A: Right.

GIVING PERSONAL INFORMATION

6A Look at the information and write questions for 1–5.

Dr 'Hakan 'Osman

Bilkent University, Ankara, ³Turkey.

⁴Phone: 039 387 4425

⁵Email: Osman@mail.bilkent.edu.tr

1 What's your first name?

B Change three things in 1–5 above.

Phone: 034 387 4425

C Work in pairs and take turns.

Student A: ask questions 1–5.

Student B: answer the questions.

Student A: find the three changes.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about their names and where they come from on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

UNIT 2

UNIT

2

SPEAKING

- › Talk about photos of family and friends
- › Check information about people
- › Suggest things to do
- › Talk about five people in your life

LISTENING

- › Listen to someone talk about photos
- › Watch a BBC programme about a royal wedding

READING

- › Read about family businesses

WRITING

- › Use contractions
- › Describe five people in your life

BBC CONTENT

- 📺 Video podcast: Who is in your family?
- 📀 DVD: Royal Wedding

people



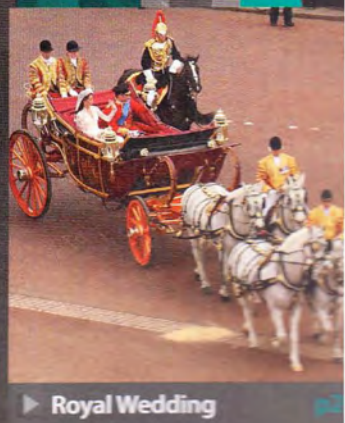
▶ Family photos **p18**



▶ A family business **p20**



▶ Let's have a break **p22**



▶ Royal Wedding **p23**

2.1 FAMILY PHOTOS

▶ GRAMMAR | be: you/we/they

▶ VOCABULARY | family

▶ HOW TO | talk about your family

Looker

Home The Tour Sign up Explore Upload

You aren't signed in Sign in Help

Search



VOCABULARY family

✓ 1A Match people 1–6 with photos A–F.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 husband and wife | 4 mother and daughter |
| 2 brothers and sister | 5 parents and children |
| 3 father and son | 6 parents and daughter |

B ▶ 2.1 Listen and underline four words with the sound /ʌ/. Then listen and repeat.

husband

C Work in pairs. Complete the table with the family words from Exercise 1A.

	
<i>husband</i>	<i>wife</i>
	
<i>parents</i>	

D Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a photo A–F. Student B: say who it is.

A: Photo E B: mother and daughter

✓ LISTENING

Write the dialogue, then choose.
Script p156

2A ▶ 2.2 Listen to the conversations. Which four of the photos (A–F) are they talking about?

1 ____ 2 ____ 3 ____ 4 ____

B Listen again. Match the names in the box with sentences 1–6.

Margit Tim Erika (x2) Johnny Lewis Flori

- 1 She's Hungarian. *Margit and ...*
- 2 He's a businessman.
- 3 She's married to an Englishman.
- 4 She's seven.
- 5 He's at university.
- 6 He's a musician.

✓ GRAMMAR be: you/we/they

3A Underline the verb *be* in the sentences.

- A: Where are you?
B: We're at home.
- A: Are they students?
B: Yes. Johnny's at university.
- A: You aren't English?
B: No, we aren't English.

B Complete the tables below with the words in the box.

're Are aren't are (x2)

You	are	from Spain.
We	're	students.
They		English.
You	are not	teachers.
We	_____	from Poland.
They		
_____	you/we/they	in the right classroom?
Yes,		_____.
No,	you/we/they	aren't.
Where	_____	you from?

C 2.3 Listen to the pronunciation of *you're*, *we're*, *they're*. Then listen and repeat.

D 2.4 Listen and write the sentences in your notebook. Then listen and repeat.

page 120 LANGUAGEBANK p122

✓ PRACTICE

4A Underline the correct alternative.

- A: This is a photo of Dan.
B: ¹Is he/ Are you brothers?
A: No, ²I'm not/ we aren't. ³He's/ We're good friends.
B: And this photo? ⁴Are they/ Is she your sisters?
A: No, they ⁵isn't/ aren't. This is my wife, Maria, with Tina. Tina and Maria are sisters. The photo is in Peru.
B: Are ⁶they/ she from Peru?
A: No, they ⁷not/ aren't. ⁸They're/ She's from Uruguay.
B: ⁹Is/ Are your wife a teacher?
A: Yes. She and Tina ¹⁰is/ are teachers.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

✓ WRITING contractions

5A Look at the example. Complete the contractions for sentences 2–4.

- They are my parents. They're my parents
- She is my daughter.
- We are not sisters.
- Tom is my brother.

B Underline the correct alternative to complete the rules.

Rules:

- Use/Don't use contractions in spoken English.
- Use/Don't use contractions in text messages and emails to friends.

C Rewrite the text messages using eight contractions.

1

Hi, Marianna.
I'm
~~I am~~ at the airport, but your brother is not here. What is his mobile number? It is not in my phone.
Tom

2

Hi, Tom. I am sorry, I don't know. We are in an English class now.

3

Hi, Marianna.
It is OK. Luca is here now.
See you soon.
T

D Work in pairs and take turns. Read out the text messages with the contractions.

🗨️ speakout TIP

Prepositions (*at, in, to, from*) are small but important. Underline the prepositions in the sentences.

I'm at the airport. We're in a lesson. Are they from Peru?
She's married to an Englishman. It's the capital of Italy.

✓ SPEAKING

6A EITHER Use two photos of your family or friends and complete the notes below. OR Work in pairs. Student A: look at the photos on page 148. Student B: look at the photos on page 152.

Photo 1

Name:
Family or friend:
Nationality:
Job:
Where is he or she now?

Photo 2

Name:
Family or friend:
Nationality:
Job:
Where is he or she now?

B Work with other students. Cover your notes and talk about the photos.

This is my brother, Juan. He's South African. He's an office worker in Cape Town.

✓ VOCABULARY numbers 11–100

11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20

1A Write the numbers next to the words.

eleven	<u>11</u>	fifteen	_____
nineteen	_____	fourteen	_____
twenty	_____	sixteen	_____
thirteen	_____	eighteen	_____
twelve	_____	seventeen	_____

B ▶ 2.5 Listen and repeat the numbers in order.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: write a number. Student B: say the number.

2A Complete the numbers.

30 thirty	70 _____
40 forty	80 _____
50 fifty	90 _____
60 sixty	100 a hundred

B ▶ 2.6 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

C ▶ 2.7 Listen and write the numbers.

1 67

3A Write the names and ages of four friends or people in your family.

Eloise 53 Andreas 28

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: tell Student B about the people. Student B: write down the names and ages.

A: Eloise is my mother.

B: How old is she?

A: She's fifty-three.

B: How do you spell Eloise?

✓ READING

4A Work in pairs and look at the photos.

What is the relationship between the people *ilişki* (e.g. husband and wife)? Write the answers.

B Read the text and check your ideas.

C Read the texts again and complete the information.

	Business	Where?	Good things
1	restaurant		small, friendly
2			
3			



Morelli's Restaurant is in downtown New York. The managers are Italians Alfonso Morelli and his sister Enrica. Her husband, Federico, is the cook. 'Our restaurant is five years old. It's a real family business. It's small and friendly and the food is fantastic.'



Star Supermarket is in the centre of Edinburgh, Scotland, and its doors are open 24/7*. Sixty-year-old manager, Alex, is from Jamaica. His wife, Dana, and daughters, Sakina and Mia, and their husbands are the shop assistants. 'We're a family business,' says Dana, 'and we're open 24/7 because people shop 24/7.'

*24/7: twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week



Hotel de Coin is a ten-room hotel in Paris. It's a small family business. The manager, Oskar, is Estonian and his wife, Brigitte, is French.' It's a family business,' says Oskar. 'My wife is the receptionist and our sons are the cooks. The hotel is only fifteen minutes from the city centre. On holiday or on business, it's the perfect place for your stay.'

✓ GRAMMAR possessive adjectives

5A Complete the sentences with *my, your, his, her, its, our, their*. Then check your answers in the texts in Exercise 4A.

- The managers are Italians Alfonso Morelli and his sister Enrica. His husband, Frederico, is the cook.
- Star Supermarket is in the centre of Edinburgh, Scotland, and its doors are open 24/7.
- His wife, Dana, and daughters, Sakina and Mia, and their husbands are the shop assistants.
- 'It's a family business,' says Oskar. 'My wife is the receptionist and our sons are the cooks.' He says, 'It's the perfect place for my stay.'

B Complete the table.

subject pronoun	possessive adjective	subject pronoun	possessive adjective
I	my	it	_____
you	_____	_____	our
_____	his	they	_____
she	_____	_____	_____

✓ PRACTICE

6A Underline the correct alternative.

- The boss is a woman – his / her name is Mani.
- His / Her husband Kasem is the receptionist.
- Kasem isn't happy in his / my job.
- Our / Their business is in a very beautiful place.
- Your / Its name is 'Tasaneer'.
- Mani says, 'Our / Their rooms are very good'.
- Kasem says, 'Yes, but my / our job isn't good!'

B Work in pairs. What is the business in Exercise 6A?

7 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Do not use one of the words.

my your his her its our their

Mama's salsa – from mother of three, Lucia Covas Garcia

'The salsa recipe is from ¹ my mother, and ² her name is *Mama's Salsa*. It's a hundred years old' says Lucia. ³ My husband Manolo and ⁴ my son Pablo are all in the family business. 'Pablo and ⁵ his wife, Sonja are the cooks and ⁶ their salsa is on sale all over South America.'



✓ SPEAKING

p150

8A Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 148. Student B: look at the information below. Make questions to find the missing information.

How old is Gerhardt Becker?

What's his ... ?

Gerhardt Becker, _____ (age), and Julia Becker, 35, are husband and wife. Gerhardt is _____ (nationality) and Julia is from Canada. Their business is in _____ (city), and they're taxi drivers. Their company name is _____ (name) and their special taxi-bus is good for families and big groups.

Jon and Liz _____ (family name) are brother and sister, and their Moroccan restaurant, *Rocco*, is in _____ (country). They're not from Morocco, they're from England, but their restaurant is very good for Moroccan food.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

2.3 LET'S HAVE A BREAK

FUNCTION | making suggestions

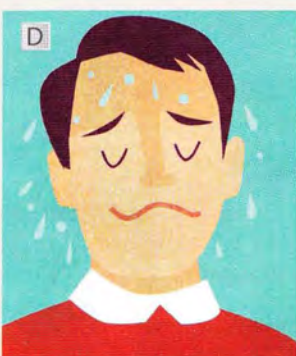
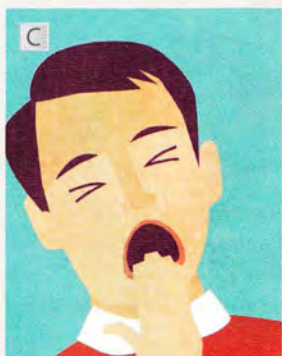
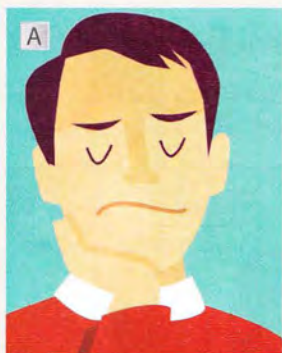
VOCABULARY | feelings

LEARN TO | respond to suggestions

VOCABULARY feelings hissiyat

1A Match the adjectives in the box with pictures A–F.

hot D cold hungry thirsty tired bored



B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: ask about a problem and point to a picture. Student B: say the problem.

A: What's the problem?

B: I'm tired.

page 140 **PHOTOBANK**
p142



FUNCTION making suggestions oneriler

2A 2.8 Listen and match conversations 1–3 with photos A–C.

1 ____ 2 ____ 3 ____

B Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1a) They're in school.
- b) Café Lugo is a Spanish cafe.
- 2a) It isn't their first meeting.
- b) His first name's Lee.
- 3a) They're tired and hot. T
- b) They're hungry.

C Correct the false sentences.

3A Which verbs in the box are in the photos?

Check vocab

eat have a coffee/cola have a break sit down go stop

B Listen again and complete the conversations with a verb from Exercise 3A. Do not use one of the verbs.

- 1 A: I'm hungry.
B: Yeah, me, too. Let's eat.
- 2 A: Nice to meet you, too.
B: Let's have a coffee/cola. Coffee?
A: Yes, please.
- 3 A: Let's have a break.
B: Good idea. I'm tired.
- 4 A: Let's go.
B: Yeah, OK. Let's stop.

C Complete the rule.

Rule:

Use ____ + verb to make a suggestion.

D 2.9 Listen and underline the stressed words in Exercise 3B. Then listen and repeat. What are they saying?

Let's eat.

page 120 **LANGUAGEBANK**
p122 Making plans
Do b/w 4 & 5



✓ 4A Complete the conversations with the words in the box. ✓✓

'm problem Me too break 's a Let

- 1 A: I ¹ 'm bored.
B: Me, ² _____.
- A: ³ _____'s stop now.
B: Good idea.
- 2 A: What's the ⁴ _____?
B: I'm cold.
A: Me, too. Let ⁵ _____ go inside.
B: OK.
A: OK, let's have a ⁶ _____ for fifteen minutes.
- 3 B: I'm thirsty.
A: ⁷ _____, too.
B: Let's have ⁸ _____ coffee.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversations.

✓ LEARN TO respond to suggestions

5A 2.10 Listen to the answers. Are they interested (+) or not interested (-)? Tick + or -.

- | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | ☒ | ☐ | 3 | ☐ | ☐ |
| 2 | ☐ | ☐ | 4 | ☐ | ☐ |

speakout TIP

Use intonation to show you are interested or happy.

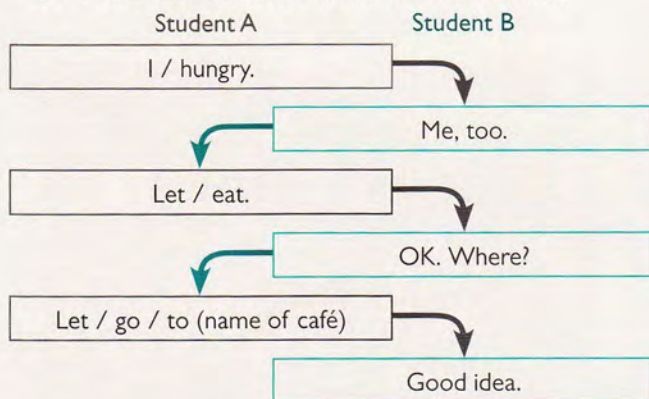
Great!

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say *Great/OK/Good idea*. Student B: point to + or -.



SPEAKING

6A Work in pairs and complete the conversation.



B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

7 Work with other students. Start your conversation with the adjectives. Make suggestions for places to go.

tired hungry hot thirsty cold bored

- A: I'm tired.
B: Me, too.
A: Let's go and have a coffee.
B: Good idea. Where?
A: Let's go to ...

✓ DVD PREVIEW

1A Work in pairs and look at the photos.
What is the relationship to William and Kate?

A: Prince Harry is his brother.

B: Yes, and I think Prince Charles is his ...



Prince William



Kate Middleton



Queen Elizabeth
and Prince Philip



Prince Charles



Prince Harry



Pippa Middleton



David and Victoria
Beckham



Elton John

B Read the programme information. Who
is at the royal wedding? Where is it?

BBC The Royal Wedding:
William and Catherine

Thousands of people are in the streets of London and billions of people around the world are by their TVs, all for the royal wedding of Prince William and Kate Middleton. The BBC programme *Royal Wedding* is the story of their big day. Their families and friends are all at Westminster Abbey for the wedding.

▶ DVD VIEW

2A Watch the DVD and number the people in
Exercise 1A in the order you see them.

David and Victoria Beckham 1

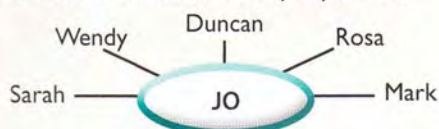
B Correct one word in each sentence.

- 1 Today is the ~~birth~~^{wedding} day of Prince William and Kate Middleton.
- 2 Victoria and David Beckham, friends of Prince William, are hungry.
- 3 Kate and her brother go to Westminster Abbey.
- 4 Her sister, Pippa Middleton arrives with daughters of friends and family.
- 5 The big moment ... and a woman with the ring.
- 6 The end of a big holiday for Kate and William.

C Watch the DVD again to check your answers.

spekout five people in your life

- ✓ 3A 2.11 Listen to Jo talk about five people in her life. Match the names with people 1–5.



- 1 a person in her family *Duncan*
- 2 a student in her class
- 3 a good friend
- 4 her teacher
- 5 a person at her work

B Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

OK, five people in my life. The first is ... (name)

Duncan's (my brother/a very good friend).

We're on the phone a lot.

I'm (a shop assistant/an office worker) and Mark's my manager.

(She/He's) very nice, very friendly.

Wendy is a (worker in my office/student in my class).

We're in a Spanish class together.

We're good friends.

C Write the names of five people in your life.

D Work in pairs and take turns. Talk about your five people.

writeback a description

- ✓ 5A Read the information and answer the questions.

- 1 Who is in her family?
- 2 Who isn't a friend?
- 3 Who is her best friend?

Five people in my life

My name is Claudia. I'm twenty-nine and I'm an IT worker. Here are five people in my life:

Betsy: She's my best friend from university. She's twenty-eight and she's in Munich, Germany. She's an actress.

Dennis: He's my brother. He's twenty-six, and he's a very good friend. He's a teacher in Japan.

Ali: She's my mother and she's my friend. We're on the phone a lot.

Edith: She's a friend from work. She's a happy person and a very good friend.

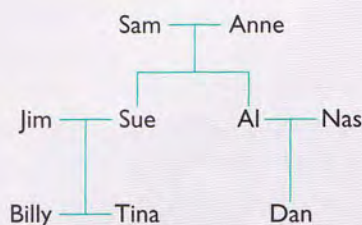
Pasqualo: He isn't a friend, but he's a nice person. He's from Italy. He's a waiter at a restaurant in my city.

B Write about five people in your life.



FAMILY

1A Look at the diagram. Write the names of the people.



- 1 My father is Sam and my sister is Sue. *Al*
- 2 My daughter is Tina and my wife is Sue.
- 3 My mother is Sue and my sister is Tina.
- 4 My parents are Sam and Anne and my brother is Al.
- 5 My son is Dan and my husband is Al.
- 6 My children are Sue and Al and my husband is Sam.

B Write three more sentences about the people in the diagram.

1 *My brother is ...*

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read out a sentence. Student B: say the name.

BE: YOU/WE/THEY

2A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

are (x4) is (x2) they (x3)
we 're

- 1 A: Who are they?
- 2 B: _____'re my friends Ali and Hesna.
- 3 A: Where _____ from?
- 4 B: _____' _____ from Syria.
- 5 A: _____ you friends from school?
- 6 B: No, _____'re friends from university.
- 7 A: _____ they married?
- 8 B: Ali _____n't married. Hesna _____ married to my brother.

B Write the names of two of your friends.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions about the friends.

NUMBERS 11–100

3A Write the numbers in words.

- 1 twenty-one + (plus) nine = thirty
- 2 ninety-nine – (minus) eleven = _____
- 3 eighty-three + fourteen = _____
- 4 thirty-two – five = _____
- 5 fifty-six + twelve = _____

B Complete the questions with a number.

- 1 What's 62 – _____?
- 2 What's 15 + _____?
- 3 What's 81 – _____?
- 4 What's 19 + _____?

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

4A Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 I'm Chinese and I'm name's Jun.
- 2 You're in Room 108 and Mr Watts is you're teacher.
- 3 He's John. He's family name's Wayford.
- 4 She's name's Vera and she's a singer.
- 5 We're students and we're class is Room Ten.
- 6 They're names are Ahmed and Ali and they're from Egypt.

B Complete the sentences about yourself and other students. Write five true sentences and one false sentence.

- 1 I'm _____ and my _____.
- 2 You're _____ and your _____.
- 3 _____'s from _____ and his _____.
- 4 _____'s from _____ and her _____.
- 5 We're _____ and our _____.
- 6 Their _____ and they're _____.

I'm Veronika and my family name's Keta.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read your sentences. Student B: which sentence is false?

FEELINGS

5A Add the vowels to complete the feelings.

- 1 h_o_t
- 2 h_n_gry
- 3 t_r_d
- 4 c_ld
- 5 th_rsty
- 6 b_r_d

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: close your book. Student B: mime a feeling. Student A: say the feeling.

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

6A Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversation.

A: go / Let's / now

B: tired / I'm / No, / Let's / down / sit.

A: a / let's / and / have / stop / OK, / break

B: Are / thirsty / you?

A: Yes / am / I

B: to / go / Let's / café / a

A: idea / Good

B Work in pairs. Write one key word from each sentence.

go
tired
stop
thirsty

C Work in pairs and practise the conversation. Use the key words to help.

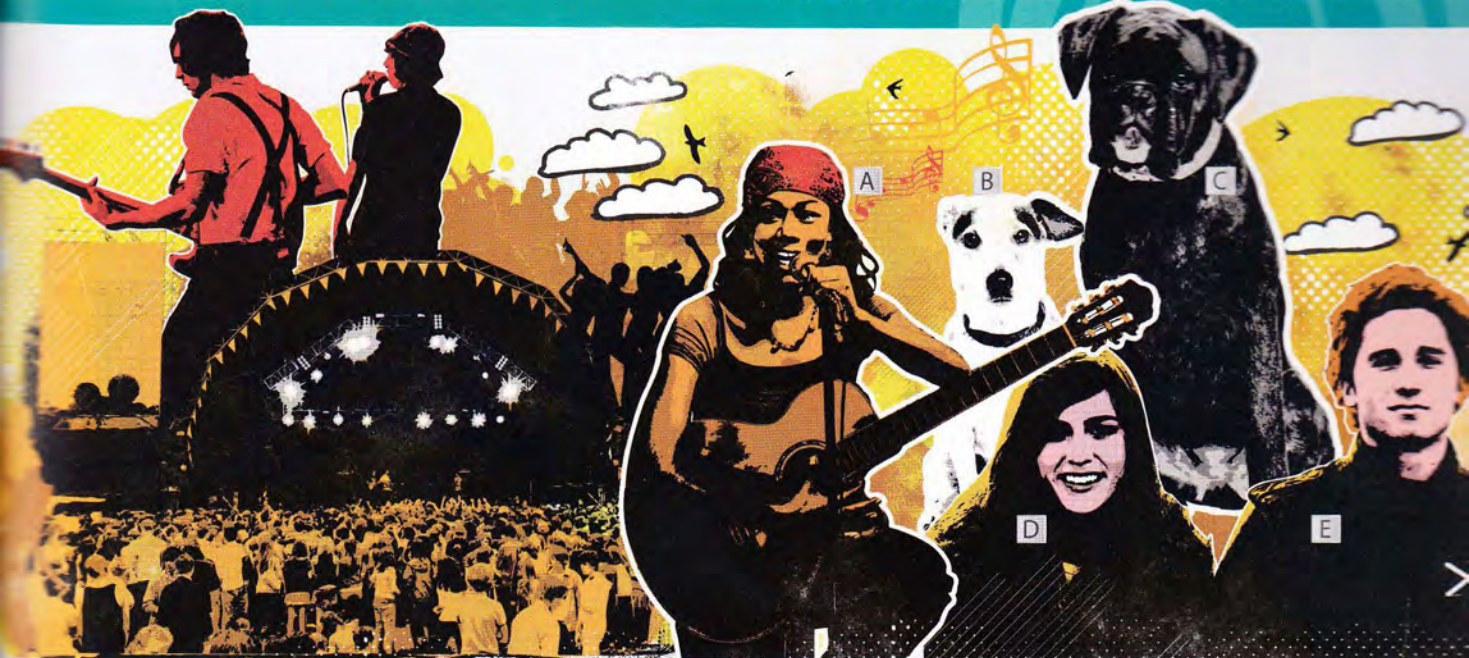
BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about their families on ActiveBook or the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout



READING AND GRAMMAR

1A Work in pairs and look at the pictures. Where are they?

B Read the messages. Write the names next to the letters of the pictures.

A _____ B Bruno C _____ D _____
E _____

1 Hi, everybody! I'm Sandra and I'm from Scotland. I'm here with my brother, Neil. He's also Scottish, of course. We're office workers in Edinburgh. Neil is a big music fan. It's my first time, and I'm very happy to be here. We're in the Festival Hotel in room 217 – please come and say hello!

2 Binny is a singer from Jaipur, India. She's twenty-four years old and is at festivals all over the world. Her music is a mix of traditional Indian and modern rock. Her concert is tonight at 8p.m. Please come and see her sing!

3 **LOST**
Fifi and Bruno, my two dogs. Fifi is black and she's one year old. Bruno is white and he's four. They're very friendly. If Fifi and Bruno are with you, text me (Jasmine) on 443 908 9442.

C Read the messages again. What are the numbers? Write *age*, *room*, or *phone* and the name.

4 age, Bruno
217 _____
4439089442 _____
24 _____
1 _____

D What music festivals are in your country? Are they good?

2A Complete the questions with words from the box. Do not use one of the words.

are (x 2) they her his is (x 2) it how

- 1 Are Sandra and Neil from Ireland?
- 2 _____ Neil a singer?
- 3 Is Sandra _____ sister?
- 4 Where _____ Binny from?
- 5 When is _____ concert?
- 6 _____ Fifi and Bruno cats?
- 7 Are _____ friendly?
- 8 _____ old is Bruno?

B Work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer the questions.

A: *Are Sandra and Neil from Ireland?*

B: *No, they aren't. They're from Scotland.*

3 Complete the messages with the correct form of *be*.

I' ¹ m here with a group of students from St Petersburg, and we' ² _____ at the festival for the first time. My room ³ _____ in the student hotel. The hotel ⁴ _____ (not) very nice, but the hotel workers ⁵ _____ all very friendly. ⁶ _____ you here alone? Don't be alone – come and see us. Let's have a party!

Arturo, ⁷ _____ you here? Where are you? Jeff and I ⁸ _____ at the HJ Hotel in room 102. Please come and see us! Robin

LISTENING

Morelli

Fatimah

Churchill

Cho

Takahashi

Gonzales

4A Work in pairs and look at the names of people at the festival. What nationality are the people?

B R1.1 Listen and check.

C Listen again. Who talks about food (F), drink (D), music (M)?

1 2 3

SPEAKING

5 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 153. Student B: look at the table below. Ask questions to complete the information.

First name	¹ Frank	² Fatimah	³ Neil and Sandra
Family name		Hassan	
Nationality	Korean		Scottish
Age		23	
Job	teacher		office workers
Email address	33chocho@yahoo.com		NeilMac42@hotmail.com SandyMac@phonex.co.uk

B: Number one is Frank. What's his family name?

A: Cho.

B: How do you spell it?

A: C-h-o. What's his nationality?

6A Write the names of three people in your family. Write their ages, jobs, relationship to you (brother, mother, etc) and where they are now.

Mike
Name
Ana

teacher
Jobs
cook

Ages
32

brother
Relationship

Canada
Where are they now?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Look at your partner's information. Ask and answer about each person.

A: Is Mike your brother?

B: Yes, he is.

A: Is he a teacher?

B: No, he isn't. He's a cook.

A: Is he in Canada?

SOUNDS: /æ/ AND /ə/

7A R1.2 Listen to the sounds and the words. Then listen and repeat.

/æ/



taxi

/ə/



teacher

B R1.3 Listen and put the words in the box in the correct group. Then listen and repeat.

doctor actor England nationality
computer understand happy
daughter

/æ/
taxi, actor

/ə/
teacher, doctor

8A Work in groups. Complete the words and circle the sound in each word.

	/ə/
a country	Br@zil
son and daughter	ch
a number	se
www	in
TV	te
a country	ln

	/æ/
it's for photos	c@mera
mother, father, son and daughter	fa
woman in a film	ac
money place	ba
big letters	ca
a job	ma

B Work with other students and compare your answers.

UNIT 3

UNIT

3

SPEAKING

- › Ask about objects
- › Talk about possessions
- › Order food and drink
- › Buy things in a market

LISTENING

- › Listen to conversations in an office
- › Listen to people in a café
- › Watch a BBC programme about a famous market

READING

- › Read descriptions of famous possessions

WRITING

- › Use linkers: *and, but*
- › Write about a market

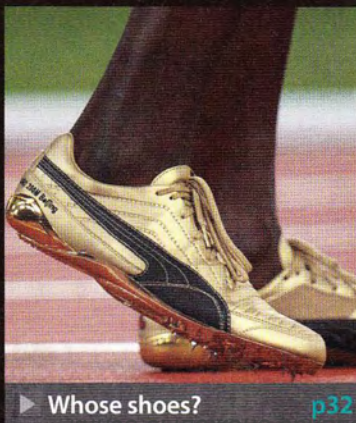
BBC content

- ▶ Video podcast: What are your favourite things?
- ▶ DVD: Francesco's Mediterranean Voyage

things



▶ What's this? p30



▶ Whose shoes? p32



▶ A coffee, please p34



▶ The Market p36

3.1 WHAT'S THIS?

▶ GRAMMAR | *this/that/these/those*

▶ VOCABULARY | objects

▶ HOW TO | ask the names for things



VOCABULARY objects

1A Work in pairs and look at photos A–D. Which objects in the box are not in the photos?

computer printer desk keys clocks lamp
business cards boxes picture chair

B Which words in the box are singular and which are plural? Write *S* or *P*.

C 3.1 Look at the pronunciation of the plural words. Then listen and repeat.

/s/ clocks

/z/ cards keys

/ɪz/ boxes

▶▶▶ page 140 **PHOTOBANK**

LISTENING

2A 3.2 Listen and match conversations 1–4 with photos A–D.

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____

B Listen again. Who is not happy? Circle two names.

Sam Mr Stanford (Bill) Anne Jill Mr Fletcher
Janet Denise

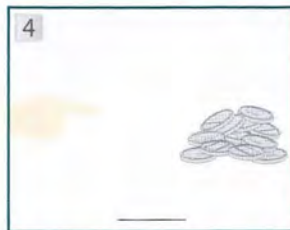
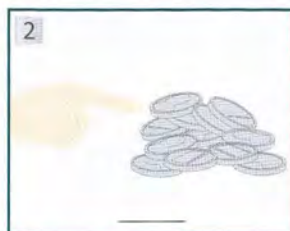
C Work in pairs and look at photos A–D. Complete the conversations with 1–4 below. Check your answers in audio script 3.2 on page 155.

- 1 And is that your new computer?
- 2 My keys?
- 3 It's my new printer.
- 4 Nice.

GRAMMAR *this/that/these/those*

3A Circle *this*, *that*, *these*, *those* in the conversations in photos A–D.

B Write *this*, *that*, *these*, *those* under pictures 1–4.



C Complete the rule with *is* or *are*.

Rule:

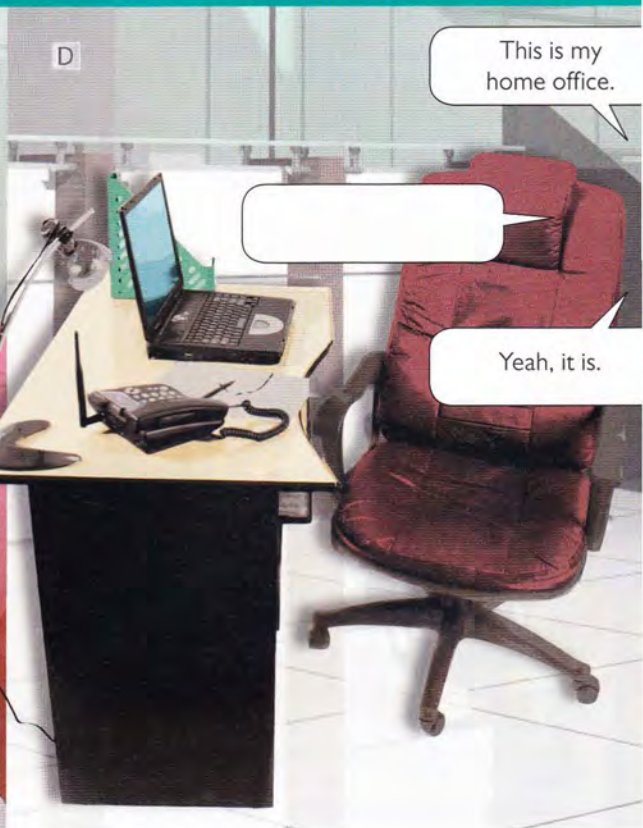
I Use *this/that* + _____.

I Use *these/those* + _____.

D 3.3 Listen and tick the word you hear. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 a) this b) these
- 2 a) this b) these
- 3 a) these b) those
- 4 a) these b) those

▶▶▶ page 122 **LANGUAGEBANK**



PRACTICE

4A Miki is a new student in a language school. Complete the conversations with *this*, *that*, *these* or *those*.

A: Miki, ¹ this is the students' room and ² _____ are my friends over there.

B: Where are they from?

A: They're from Italy and Brazil. Hi, everyone. ³ _____ is Miki, from Japan.

B: Hello.

A: OK, Miki. Here's our classroom and ⁴ _____ is our teacher, Mrs King. Mrs King!

C: Yes. Who's ⁵ _____? Oh hello, Sylvie. And you're the new student, yes?

B: Yes, I'm Miki. Hello.

C: Hello, Miki. Welcome to the class. ⁶ _____ is your coursebook.

B: Thank you.

C: And have one of ⁷ _____ dictionaries here.

B: Thanks.

C: Please sit down. ⁸ _____ desk is free, over there by the window.

B Work in groups and practise the conversations.

speakout TIP

For your phrasebook: introduce people with *This is* + name: *This is my sister, Tina. This is Dr Meyer.*

Mr = man; *Mrs* = married woman; *Miss* = single woman; *Ms* = married or single woman; *Dr* = Doctor

SPEAKING

5A Work in pairs. Choose three objects in the classroom and three objects from your bag.

B Write the English words for the objects. Look in a dictionary or ask your teacher.

C Work in groups and take turns. Point to your objects and ask questions.

A: What are those in English?

B: They're windows. What's this in English?

C: I don't know.

D: It's a purse.



3.2 WHOSE SHOES?

▶ GRAMMAR | possessive 's

▶ VOCABULARY | clothes and colours

▶ HOW TO | talk about clothes



The Museum of Memorabilia: Top Six

Are you interested in famous people? What about famous objects? A glove, a dress, a guitar? The Museum of Memorabilia* is a museum of famous people's things, but what are the Top Six? Read the list and find out:

- 1 Elvis Presley's guitar. Presley is The King of Rock and Roll, or simply The King. This is his guitar from the film *Love Me Tender*.
- 2 Usain Bolt's gold running shoes. Bolt is Jamaican and is a three-time Olympic gold medallist.
- 3 Venus Williams's tennis racquet. Williams and her sister, Serena, both from the USA, are the winners of over 45 major tennis competitions.
- 4 Daniel Radcliffe's glasses. They aren't really Daniel's but they're Harry Potter's glasses from the films. The English actor is famous as Harry Potter, but is also famous for his acting in theatre.
- 5 Michael Jackson's glove. Jackson is still called 'The King of Pop' and this is the most famous glove in the world.
- 6 Marilyn Monroe's white dress. Monroe fans all know this dress – it's from the 1955 film *The Seven Year Itch*.

*memorabilia = objects from famous people, places, films, sports, etc.

GRAMMAR possessive 's

3A Add 's in the correct place in each sentence. Use the text to help.

- 1 These are Daniel Radcliffe's glasses.
- 2 These are Usain Bolt gold running shoes.
- 3 This is Michael Jackson glove.
- 4 This is Venus Williams tennis racquet.

B **3.4** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

C Complete the rule.

Rule: Use a name + for the possessive.

page 122 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

4A Complete the questions.

- 1 these / Nico / books?
Are these Nico's books?
- 2 that / Yasmin / chair?
- 3 those / the teacher / shoes?
- 4 this / Carolyn / phone?
- 5 these / James / pens?

B Change questions 1–5 to make questions about students and things in your classroom.

1 *Are these Nico's books?* *Is this Emir's book?*

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

READING

1A Work in pairs and look at photos 1–6 above. What's in the museum?

B Work in pairs. Match the objects in the photos with the famous people on page 33.

C Read the text and check your ideas.

D Read the text again and find:

- two names of films
- two singers
- two clothes
- two sports people
- two nationalities

2A Work in pairs and think about music, films and sport. Write the names of three objects from famous people.

B Work in groups and choose one object for the museum.



VOCABULARY clothes and colours

5A Write the names of clothes 1–6 under pictures A–F below.

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|
| 1 T-shirt | 3 hat | 5 jacket |
| 2 sweater | 4 shirt | 6 trousers |

B Work in pairs. Match the clothes with the famous people in the photos above.

A: I think these are Michael Jackson's trousers.

B: No, I think they're Elvis Presley's.

C 3.5 Listen and check your ideas.

D Match the colours in the box with the clothes in pictures A–F below. Then listen again and check.

black blue brown red white yellow

page 141 **PHOTOBANK**



6A Write four sentences about people's clothes in your class. Write two true sentences and two false sentences.

Nina's shoes are red.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read a sentence. Student B: say if it's true or false.

WRITING linkers *and*, *but*

7A Complete the sentences with *and* or *but*.

- Argentinean football shirts are blue _____ white.
- Marilyn Monroe's famous dress is white _____ her famous hat is white, too.
- Serena Williams's favourite colour is blue _____ her tennis dress is white.

B Complete the sentences with *and* (x2) or *but* (x2).

- These are Gisele Bündchen's sunglasses _____ hat. Her name is German _____ she's Brazilian.
- This is basketball player Luol Deng's red shirt. Deng isn't from Britain _____ he's in the British basketball team _____ he's in an American team: the Chicago Bulls.

C Complete the sentences with *and* and *but*.

- This / be / actress Penelope Cruz / hat. Cruz / be / from Spain / she / be / in American films.
- This / be / football player Miroslav Klose / shirt. Klose / be / from Poland / his / nationality / be / German / he / be / in / the German national team.

SPEAKING

8 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 149. Student B: turn to page 151.

3.3 A COFFEE, PLEASE

► **FUNCTION** | ordering in a café

► **VOCABULARY** | food and drink

► **LEARN TO** | say prices

✓ VOCABULARY food and drink

1A Look at the photo. What is it? Where is it?

B Read the information and find the country names.

The very first American-style Hard Rock Café (now forty years old) is in the centre of London, England. There are Hard Rock Cafés and Hotels in fifty-two countries around the world: from Hong Kong in China to Caracas in Venezuela and Prague in the Czech Republic. The cafés are full of rock and roll memorabilia: guitars, photos and even a Cadillac from the 1950s.

C Work in pairs and answer the questions.

- What is in every Hard Rock Café? Do you know a Hard Rock Café?
- What cafés are good in your town/city?

2A Match phrases 1–6 with pictures A–F.

1 A sandwich and a coffee

A



2 A tea and a cake

B



3 A mineral water and a sandwich

C



4 A cola and a cake

D



5 A tea and a mineral water

E



6 A coffee and a cola

F



B Work in pairs and check your answers.

C Work in pairs and cover the words in 1–6 above. Take turns to order the food and drink.

A: Can I help you?

B: A sandwich and a coffee, please.

A: OK, here you are.



FUNCTION ordering in a café

3A ▶ 3.6 Listen to the conversations and correct the customers' orders. *What are the prices?*

- 1 white coffee with sugar
- 2 espresso coffees and 1 cappuccino
- 3 1 egg sandwich (white bread), 1 chocolate cake, 1 cola
- 4 1 sparkling mineral water, 1 sandwich

B Who says the sentences? Write C (customer) or W (waiter).

- How much is that? C
- Anything else?
- Still or sparkling?
- Can I have a mineral water, please?
- No, thank you.
- That's two euros.
- Sparkling, please.

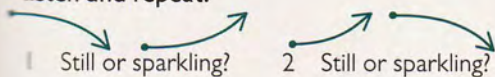
C ▶ 3.7 Number sentences a)–g) in order. Then listen and check. *sirayla*



4A Complete the table.

_____ I have	a two	mineral water, please? coffees, _____?
Still Espresso	_____	sparkling? cappuccino?
		Sparkling, please. Espresso, please.

B ▶ 3.8 Listen and tick the intonation you hear. Then listen and repeat.

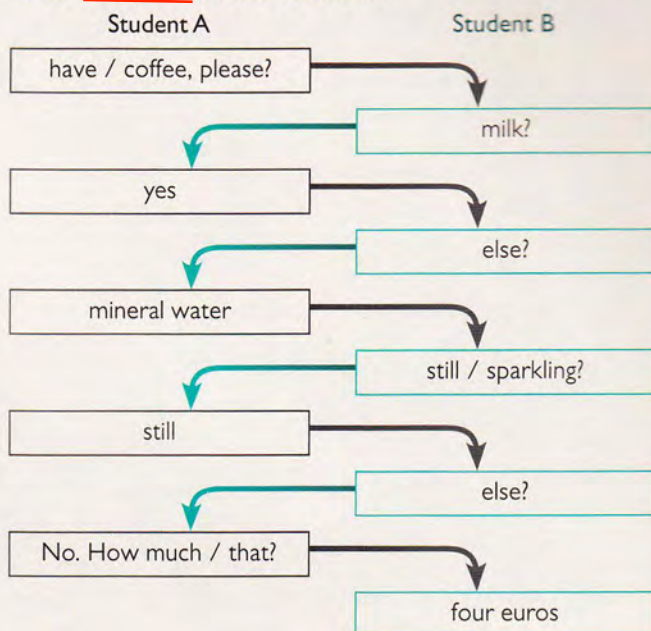


C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer using the words in the box.

Coffee / tea?	Espresso / cappuccino?
Still / sparkling?	Short and Long sentences

A: Coffee or tea? **B:** Tea, please.

5A Complete the conversation.



B Work in pairs and take turns. Practise the conversation.

▶ page 122 **LANGUAGEBANK** p124

LEARN TO say prices

6A ▶ 3.9 Listen and number the prices in order.

3.00 2.50 10 1.50 1 5.20 12.75

B Listen again and repeat.

speakout TIP

Say prices with the name (e.g. euros) or with no name:
3.99 = three euros ninety-nine OR three ninety-nine.

C Write four prices in your country's money.

D Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read the prices. Student B: write the prices.

SPEAKING

7 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 148. Student B: turn to page 152. On previous sheet: conversation for 2.2



DVD PREVIEW

1A Match objects 1–6 with pictures A–F.

- | | | |
|-----------|----------------------------|-------------|
| 1 spices | E | 4 jewellery |
| 2 clothes | 5 pottery | |
| 3 carpets | 6 leather wallets and bags | |



B Which objects in Exercise 1A are in markets in your town or city?

2 Read the programme information. Where is Francesco? What is his new job?

BBC Francesco's Mediterranean Voyage

Francesco da Mosto is an Italian TV presenter. In this programme Francesco is in Istanbul, Turkey, at the Grand Bazaar – Istanbul's famous market. His new 'job' is a carpet seller but he says 'I don't know anything about carpets!' His friend and teacher, Harkan, helps him. Is Francesco a good salesman?



DVD VIEW

3A Watch the DVD. Which objects in Exercise 1A are in the market? Tick the objects.

B Watch the DVD again and underline the word you hear in the sentences.

- 1 My *first/second* day in Istanbul.
- 2 There are four *hundred/thousand* shops here.
- 3 I'm here to *study/learn*.
- 4 This is *new/nice*. This looks old but it is not old.
- 5 This is a *free/real* art. Like Turkish Picasso.
- 6 It's *not good/a nightmare*!
- 7 A: Three hundred dollars.
B: *Eight/Nine* hundred.
- 8 Americans are good. They are *friendly/beautiful*.
- 9 It's his first *carpet/sale*.
- 10 We will give you a special *discount/price*, five hundred dollars.

C Work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 Is Francesco a good salesman?
- 2 Is Harkan (the Turkish man) a good salesman?



speakout in a market

4A ▶ 3.10 Listen to the conversation. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 The lamps are from Morocco. *F*
They're from Turkey.
- 2 The seller's first price is 215.
- 3 The woman's first price is 50.
- 4 The final price is 150.

B Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

Excuse me.

Where is (this/that) (lamp/carpet) from?

Where are (these/those) (lamps/carpets) from?

Can I have a look?

This one?

No, that one.

How much (is it/are they?)

That's expensive.

For you, a special (discount/price.)

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: you are the customer. Choose an item from Exercise 1A. Student B: you are the seller. Choose a price. Role-play the situation.

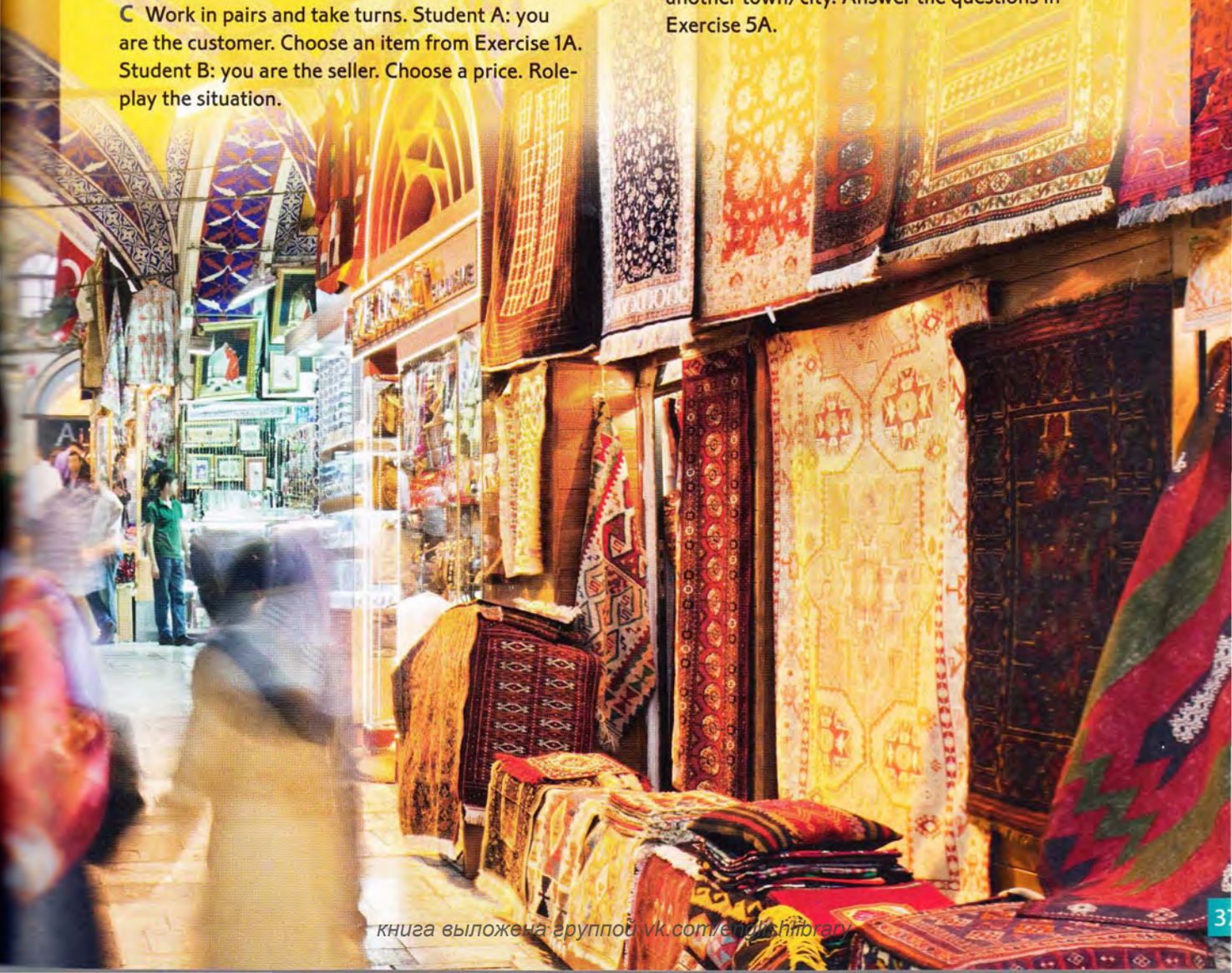
writeback a description

5A Read the description of a market and answer the questions.

- 1 What's the name of the market?
- 2 Where is it?
- 3 Is it open every day?
- 4 What is it good for?

Covent Garden market is in the centre of London. It's open every day and it's good for beautiful jewellery, clothes and pictures. It's also good for small shops and cafés. It's a famous tourist attraction for visitors to London and there are people from all over the world. I'm not a tourist, I'm from London, but for me Covent Garden market is a good place to stop and have a break.

B Write about a market in your town/city or another town/city. Answer the questions in Exercise 5A.



OBJECTS

1 Add the vowels to complete the objects.

- 1 key
- 2 c__mp__t__r
- 3 d__sk
- 4 ch__r
- 5 print__r
- 6 b__s__n__ss c__rd
- 7 cl__ck
- 8 b__x
- 9 l__mp
- 10 p__ct__r__

THIS/THAT/THESE/THOSE

2A Complete the conversation with *this*, *that*, *these* or *those*.

- Jan: Maria, ¹ this is my husband, Carlos. Carlos, ² _____ is my friend from school, Maria.
- Carlos: Hello, Maria. Nice to meet you.
- Maria: Nice to meet you, too. Are ³ _____ your children?
- Carlos: Yes, ⁴ _____ is my daughter, Ana, and ⁵ _____ is my son, Paolo.
- Maria: Hi.
- Carlos: Say 'Hi' to Maria.
- Ana and Paolo: Hi.
- Carlos: Is ⁶ _____ your car over there?
- Maria: Yes, it is. And ⁷ _____ are my children in the car. Come and say 'Hi'.

B Work in groups and practise the conversation.

C Work in pairs. Write a new name, nationality and job for your partner.

Naomi, Greek, hairdresser

D Work in groups. Introduce your partner.

A: Yuko, this is Naomi. Naomi, this is Yuko.

B: Hi ...

POSSESSIVE 'S

3A Complete the captions with a name from the box.

Shakespeare Mozart
Michael Jordan Galileo
Bill Gates Picasso



- 1 Shakespeare's pen
- 2 _____ computer
- 3 _____ brush
- 4 _____ telescope
- 5 _____ basketball
- 6 _____ piano

B Work in pairs and take turns.

Student A: choose a student's possession. Say *It's ...* and the name of the person. Student B: Ask three questions to find the object.

A: *It's Radu's.*

B: *Is it Radu's pen?*

A: *No, it isn't.*

B: *Is it ... ?*

CLOTHES AND COLOURS

4A Put the letters in the correct order to make four clothes and four colours. The first letter is underlined.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1 ser <u>d</u> s | 5 taje <u>ck</u> |
| 2 kl <u>a</u> bc | 6 lo <u>y</u> wel |
| 3 l <u>b</u> eu | 7 ret <u>s</u> ours |
| 4 thi <u>r</u> s | 8 nor <u>b</u> w |

B Write three more clothes and three colours.

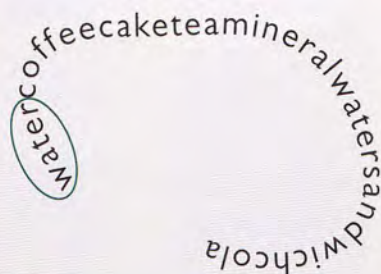
C Work in pairs and take turns.

Student A: say a word. Student B: spell it.

A: *hat* B: *h-a-t*

FOOD AND DRINK

5 Find and circle seven food and drink words.



ORDERING IN A CAFÉ

6A Complete the conversation.

A: ¹help / you? *Can I help you?*

B: ²egg sandwich

A: ³White / brown?

B: ⁴White

A: ⁵else?

B: ⁶mineral water

A: ⁷Still / sparkling?

B: ⁸Sparkling. How much / that?

A: ⁹\$5.90

B: ¹⁰here / are

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation. Then cover your answers and practise it again.

7A Complete the pairs with your ideas.

1 coffee / tea

2 cappuccino / _____

3 still / _____

4 euros / _____

B Work in groups. Student A: say one of your words and *or*. The other students: complete the question. Pay attention to the intonation.

A: *Coffee or ... ?*

B: *Coffee or tea?*

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about their things on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

UNIT 4

UNIT

4

SPEAKING

- › Find things in common
- › Find differences in pictures
- › Tell the time
- › Talk about your favourite season

LISTENING

- › Listen to people talk about life in the USA
- › Listen to people tell the time
- › Watch a BBC programme about life on a river

READING

- › Read about people and their avatars

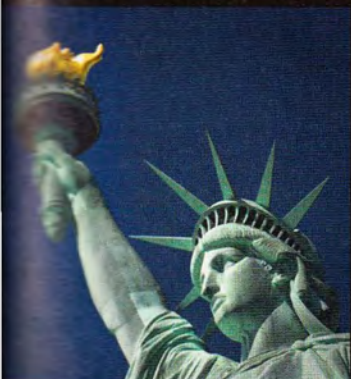
WRITING

- › Use linkers: *and, because*
- › Write about your favourite season

BBC content

- 📺 Video podcast: What do you do for fun?
- 📀 DVD: Rivers

life



› What's different? p40



› Double lives p42



› What time is it? p44



› Rivers p46

VOCABULARY verb phrases

1A Complete the word webs with the verbs in the box.

like study work do have go live drive

football
coffee — 1 like — clothes

a brother
a phone — 2 _____ — a cola

for the BBC
in an office — 3 _____ — in the evenings

a car
a taxi — 4 _____ — to the shops

English
at university — 5 _____ — ten hours a week

in a house
with my parents — 6 _____ — in a flat

to a café
to Spain — 7 _____ — to room ten

your homework
Exercise 3A — 8 _____ — sport

B Work in pairs. Which phrases from Exercise 1A are in the photos?

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a sentence about yourself. Student B: say if it's true for you.

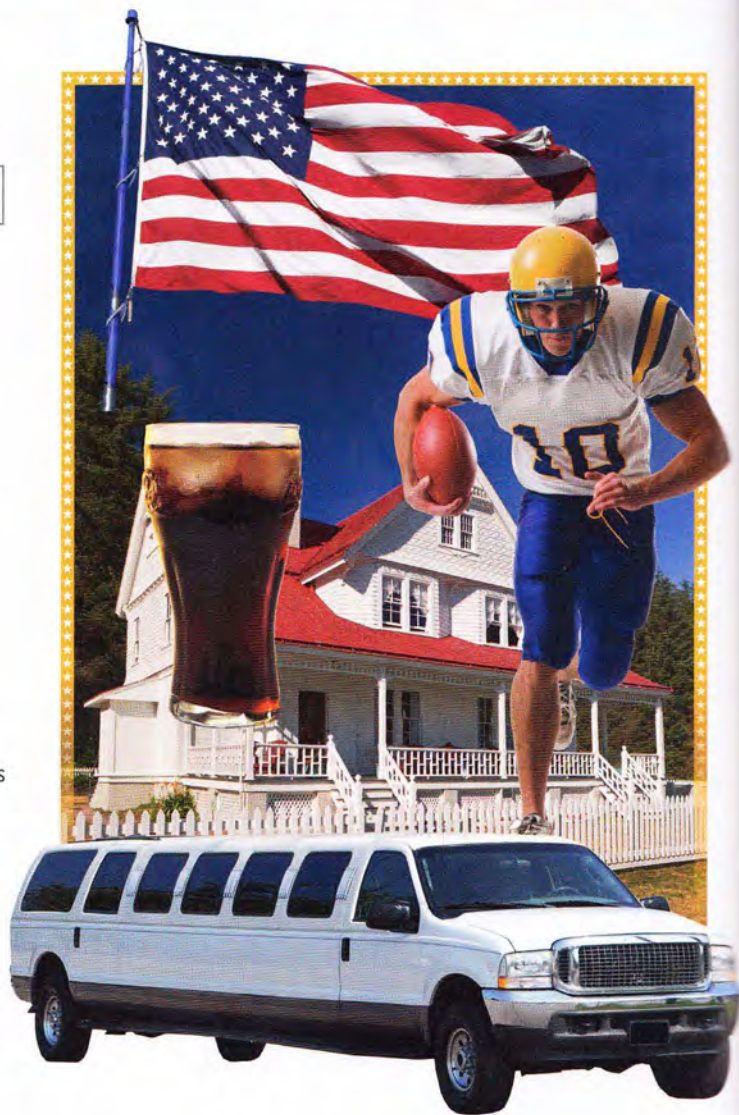
A: I like coffee.

B: Me, too. (✓) I work in an office.

A: I don't. (X)

speakout TIP

It's good to learn verb phrases (*work in an office*), not just verbs (*work*). Write verb phrases in your notebook.



LISTENING

2A Read the programme information. Are the people from the USA?

11a.m. – The USA Today

People from different countries speak about their life in the USA. Is life in the USA the same or different from their countries?

B ▶ 4.1 Listen and number the topics in the order people talk about them. One topic is not in the listening.

friends students American football houses 1 cars

C Listen again and underline the correct alternative.

- 'In the USA, people live in houses / flats.'
- 'Students have jobs in the mornings / evenings.'
- 'People drive / walk two hundred metres to the shops.'
- 'My American friends like the same / different things.'

2.1 Why doesn't he work?

3.1 Does she have a car?

4.1 What do they like?

GRAMMAR present simple: I/you/we/they

3A Underline the verbs in the sentences.

- 1 We live in flats.
- 2 They work in the evenings.
- 3 You like the same things.
- 4 I don't drive to the shops.

B Complete the table.

+	I You	like	sport.
-	We They	_____ live	in a house.

page 124 **LANGUAGEBANK** p126

PRACTICE

4A Complete the sentences with a verb in the positive or negative.

- 1 I _____ *live* with a friend. (+)
- 2 I _____ two sisters. (+)
- 3 I _____ a camera. (-)
- 4 I _____ English five hours a week. (+)
- 5 I _____ in an office. (-)

B Tick the sentences above that are true for you. Change the sentences that aren't true.

- 1 *I don't live with a friend. I live with my parents.*

WRITING and, because

5A Read the blog entry. Which things are the same in your life?

My two cities

I'm from Toronto, Canada, but I work in Osaka, Japan, six months a year. I like life in Japan, but it's very different.

In Toronto, I live in a big house and I drive to the shops because they're five kilometres from my house. In Osaka, I live in a small flat and I walk to work because I don't have a car. I'm often tired because we work six days a week.



B Complete the sentences with *and* or *because*. Then check in the text.

- 1 I live in a big house _____ I drive to the shops.
- 2 I'm often tired _____ we work six days a week.

C Complete the sentences with *and* or *because*.

- 1 My English is good _____ I study a lot.
- 2 I like coffee _____ I have ten cups every day.
- 3 I'm a waiter _____ I work in the city centre.
- 4 I don't walk to work _____ it's ten kilometres.

6A Write a blog entry about your life. Use *and* and *because*. Write 50–70 words.

B Work in pairs and read your blogs. What is the same and what is different?

GRAMMAR present simple questions

7A Complete the tables with *do* or *don't*.

_____	you	have	a car?
Yes, I _____.	No, I _____.		

Where	_____	you	live?
What	_____		study?

B 4.2 Listen and circle the correct intonation.

A: Do you live in a flat? ¹ ↗ ↘

B: Yes, I do. ² ↗ ↘ And you? ³ ↗ ↘

A: No, I don't. ⁴ ↗ ↘ I live in a house. ⁵ ↗ ↘

C Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

page 124 **LANGUAGEBANK** p126

PRACTICE

8A Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 cats / like / you / Do ?
Do you like cats?
- 2 films / like / you / Do / American ?
- 3 have / Do / a / you / dictionary ?
- 4 you / like / Do / cola ?
- 5 sports / like / do / you / What ?
- 6 live / Where / you / do ?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

SPEAKING

9A Work alone and complete the sentences.

- 1 I like ... *I like Chinese food.*
- 2 I don't like ...
- 3 I study ...
- 4 I have ...
- 5 I don't have ...

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions.

A: *Do you like Chinese food?*

B: *Yes, I do.*

A: *Me, too.*

C Tell the class the things that are the same for you and your partner.

We both like Chinese food ...

Me and my avatar



Rebecca

In real life, Rebecca Green is a normal twenty-eight-year-old. Rebecca lives in London and works in a bank. She has a small flat one hour from London by train, and she doesn't have a car because it costs a lot of money. She says she likes her job, but she also says she wants a new job, a new life. She watches TV every night, and goes shopping with her friends at the weekend. She doesn't like sport.

In her other life, Rebecca is LittleMe – that's her Second Life avatar. LittleMe lives in a tree house and is a singer at a club. She drives a sports car and has a boyfriend, RexO5. He plays guitar in LittleMe's band. She doesn't know his real life name or identity.



LittleMe



José

In real life, José Delgado is a normal thirty-year-old. He lives in a small flat in Chicago and he works in a supermarket. He doesn't drive but he likes cycling and always cycles to work. José speaks Spanish because his family is from Ecuador, and he teaches Spanish at a language school on Saturday mornings. José doesn't have a lot of friends in Chicago, so in the evenings he plays computer games and at the weekend he phones and emails his old friends from Ecuador or he watches football on TV.

In his other life, José is RexO5 – that's his Second Life avatar. He lives in a big flat and plays guitar in a band at a club. He drives a sports car and has a girlfriend, LittleMe – she sings in the band. He doesn't know her real life name or identity.



RexO5

READING

1A Look at the photos of two people and their avatars. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who do you think works in a bank?
- 2 Who do you think sings in a band?
- 3 Who do you think drives a sports car?
- 4 Who do you think speaks Spanish?
- 5 Who do you think lives in a tree house?
- 6 Who do you think plays guitar in a band?

B Work in pairs and check your answers. Student A: read Rebecca's text. Student B: read José's text. Two answers are not in your text.

C Work with other students. Student As: check your answers. Student Bs: check your answers.

2A Work in pairs. Student A: you are Rebecca.

Complete the questions to ask José. Student B: you are José. Complete the questions to ask Rebecca.

- 1 Where / live? *Where do you live?*
- 2 What / your job?
- 3 drive?
- 4 What / do / in the evening?
- 5 What / do / at the weekend?
- 6 What / your avatar's name?

B Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions 1–6. Find three differences between each person in their real life and in their Second Life.

C Work with other students and discuss. Are Rebecca and José a good couple? What about LittleMe and RexO5?

GRAMMAR present simple: *he/she/it*

3A Underline the verbs in the sentences.

- 1 Rebecca lives in London.
- 2 She has a small flat.
- 3 She doesn't have a car.

B Complete the table. Use the sentences above and the text in Exercise 1B to help.

+	He	work	_____	in a supermarket.
	She	watch	_____	TV every night.
	It	cost	_____	a lot of money.
	He	ha	_____	a small flat.
-	He	_____	know	her name.
	She	_____	have	a house.

C Complete the rules.

Rules:

- 1 *He/she/it* + verb + _____.
- 2 With *have*: use *he/she/it* + _____.
- 3 With verbs ending *-ch* and *-o*: use verb + _____.

4A 4.3 Listen and write the verbs.

B Which two verbs have the sound /ɪz/ at the end? Listen and check, then listen and repeat.

page 124 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

5A Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

My real name's Dean and my avatar, NeoStar, is very different from me. He ¹ _____ (live) in a beautiful house, but I ² _____ (live) in a small flat. I ³ _____ (work) in a school but he ⁴ _____ (not have) a job and he ⁵ _____ (have) a lot of free time. He ⁶ _____ (know) a lot of people and in the evenings, he ⁷ _____ (go) out to clubs with his friends. I ⁸ _____ (not know) many people here and I ⁹ _____ (not go) out because it ¹⁰ _____ (cost) a lot. He ¹¹ _____ (like) his life, but I ¹² _____ (not like) my life.

B Work in pairs and close your books. Write what you remember about Dean and NeoStar.

SPEAKING

6 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 149. Student B: turn to page 153.

VOCABULARY days; time phrases

7A Number the days of the week in order.

Saturday _____
 Thursday _____
 Wednesday _____
 Sunday _____
 Tuesday _____
 Friday _____
 Monday 1

B 4.4 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

8A Complete the phrases with *in*, *on*, *at* or *every*.

- 1 every day, week, month, Monday, weekend, morning
- 2 _____ the weekend, night
- 3 _____ the morning, the afternoon, the evening
- 4 _____ Monday, Wednesday

B Underline the correct alternative.

- 1 I have coffee *in/on/every* morning.
- 2 I don't have coffee *in/on/every* the evening.
- 3 I meet my friends *in/at/on* Fridays and Saturdays.
- 4 I don't work *on/at/every* the weekend.
- 5 I study English *on/at/every* day.

C Change the sentences above so that they are true for you. Then work in pairs and compare your answers.

A: I have tea every morning.

B: I don't. I have coffee.



VOCABULARY events

1A Match the words in the box with events A–F. Do not use one of the words.

film party play concert match
festival lesson

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer about the events in the box.

A: Do you like concerts?

B: No, I don't. What about you?

A: I don't like concerts, but I like plays.

FUNCTION telling the time

2A 4.5 Listen to the conversations. Which event does the person ask about?

- 1 music festival
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

B Listen again. Complete the conversations with a number.

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me, what time is it?

B: It's _____ o'clock.

Conversation 2

B: What time's the lesson?

A: At half past _____.

Conversation 3

A: Excuse me. What time is the film?

B: At quarter to _____ and half past _____.

Conversation 4

B: What time's the match?

A: At quarter past _____.

Conversation 5

A: What time is it now?

B: It's quarter to _____.

Conversation 6

A: What time's the concert?

B: At quarter past _____.

page 124 LANGUAGEBANK

A



B



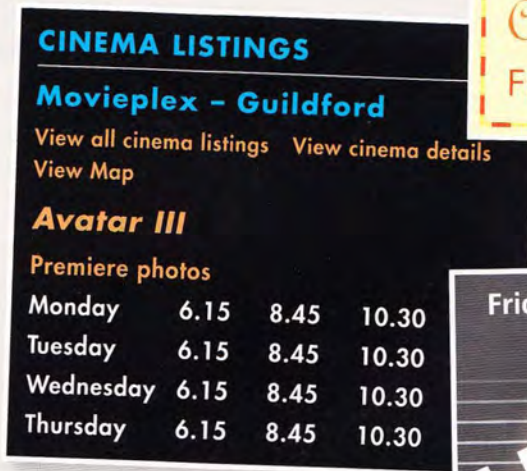
C



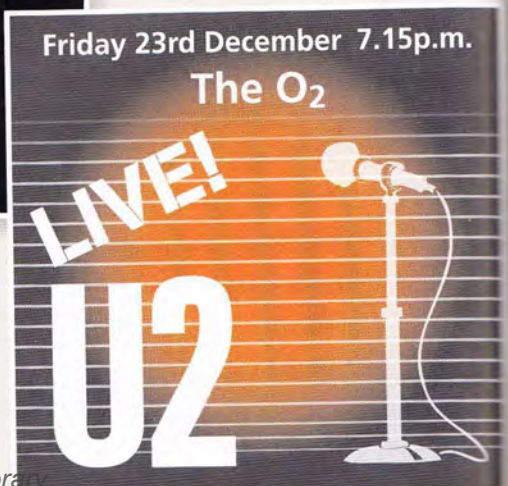
D



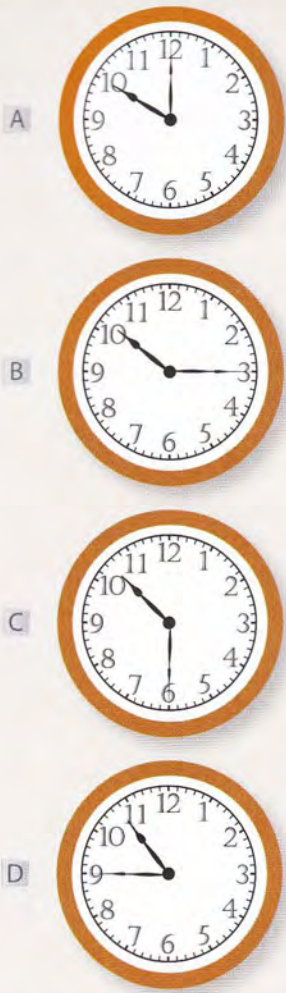
E



F



3A 4.6 Listen and repeat the times.



B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: ask the time. Student B: say the time.



LEARN TO check times

4A Look at the conversation. How does the speaker check the time? Underline three sentences.

A: What time is the concert?

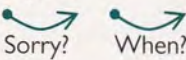
B: At quarter past seven.

A: Sorry? When?

B: Quarter past seven.

A: Quarter past seven. Thanks.

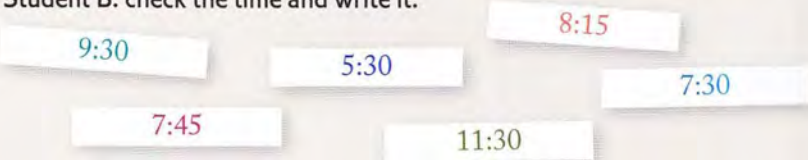
B 4.7 Look at the intonation in the questions. Then listen and repeat.



speakout TIP

Check you understand people's answers. Repeat the information to check you understand.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say one of the times below. Student B: check the time and write it.



A: Quarter to eight.

B: Sorry? When?

A: Quarter to eight.

B: Quarter to eight. Thanks.

SPEAKING

5A Work in pairs. Student A: look at the information below. Ask Student B to come to the events. Student B: turn to page 149.

Saturday	Sunday
10.15a.m. – film	
	1.45p.m. – play
9.30p.m. – party	

A: Let's go to a film on Saturday!

B: What time is it?

A: It's at quarter past ten.

B: OK!

B Write the events and times that Student B suggests.

DVD PREVIEW

1A Which words in the box are in the photos?

river falls/waterfall fish bridge boat

B Look at the map. Which countries does the Mekong River cross? Where are the Khone Falls?



C Match the opposites.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1 wet | a) easy |
| 2 fresh | b) safe |
| 3 difficult | c) dead |
| 4 dangerous | d) dry |
| 5 alive | e) frozen |

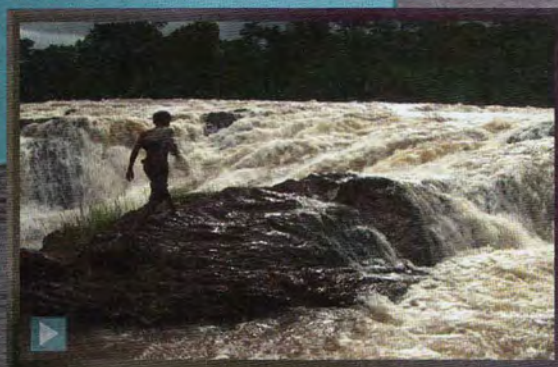
2 Read the programme information. What are three good things and two bad things about rivers? Who is the man in the photo?

BBC Human Planet: Rivers

The BBC series *Human Planet* is about the lifestyles of people around the world. This programme looks at the life of people who live by rivers.

Rivers are alive. They change with the four seasons. Rivers give us many things: fresh water, food, and ways to go from place to place. But life on a river is sometimes difficult and dangerous.

Sam Niang and his family live by the Mekong River near the Khone Falls. This is the story of a day in his life in the rainy season.



DVD VIEW

3A Watch the DVD. Tick the correct alternative in each group.

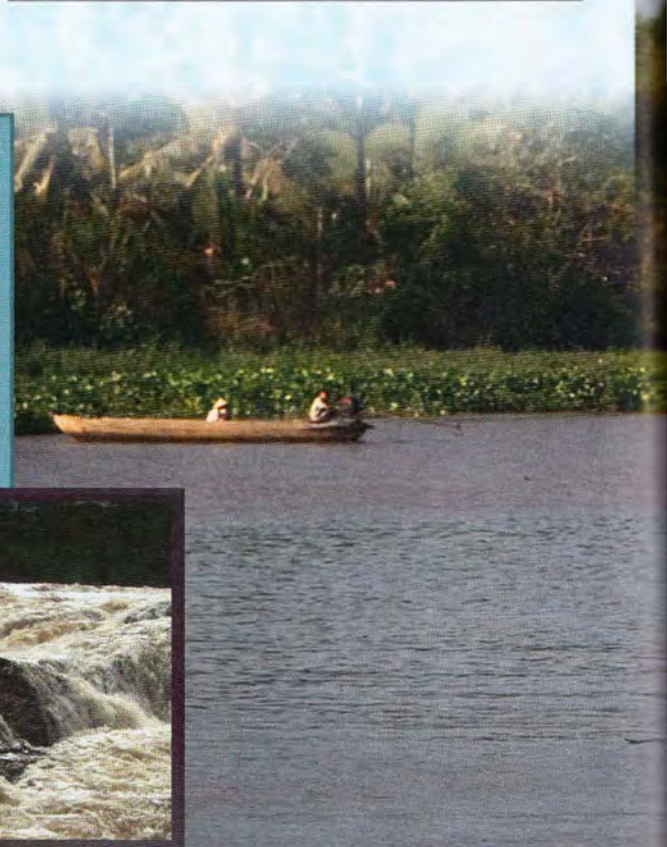
A family	goes to the market	and buys a fish.
A man	walks to the river	and catches a fish.
A woman	crosses a bridge	and catches two fish.

B Work in pairs. Watch the DVD again and underline the correct alternative.

- The world is a place of extremes: hot and *frozen/cold*, wet and *fresh/dry*.
- In winter, the dry season, the Falls *are/aren't* very big but in summer, the *rainy/wet* season, they're very dangerous.
- He crosses the river on a *simple/small* bridge. It's very, very *difficult/dangerous*. A man falls and he's *frozen/dead*.
- Sam Niang fishes. He catches his family's *lunch/dinner*.
- Tomorrow is a *new/hot* day and Sam Niang will go back to the *river/bridge* to catch fish for his family again.

C Work in pairs and discuss. How do you think Sam Niang feels? Choose words from the box.

afraid happy angry tired hot surprised
hungry bored



speakout a favourite season

4A Think about your favourite season. Why do you like it? Think about:

- holidays • clothes
- activities • weather

B  **4.8** Listen to someone talking about her favourite season. Tick the topics she talks about.

C Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

My favourite season is (spring/summer/autumn/winter)

I like it because it's ...

It's a beautiful season.

I don't like the (summer/winter) because I don't like (very hot/very cold) weather.

My favourite holiday is in (autumn).

(The/My family/Friends) come(s) together for (a big dinner/a party).

5A Work in pairs. Practise talking about your favourite season. Use the key phrases to help.

B Work in groups and take turns. One student: talk about your favourite season. Other students: listen and ask one question.

writeback a forum reply

6A Read the message from a forum and answer the questions.

- 1 What is Kylie's favourite season?
- 2 Why?
- 3 What is the problem with this season?



Open Question

What is your favourite season and why?

Asked by Jay Green

My favourite season is _____. I like it because I love the cold mornings and the frozen countryside. The trees and the roads are beautiful ... all white and fresh. I know that travelling is difficult but it's not a problem for me. I walk everywhere! I also like _____ because I go skiing in the mountains.

Answers (9)

B Write a reply to the forum about your favourite season. Use 40–60 words and remember to use *and*, *but* and *because*. Answer the questions below.

- 1 What is your favourite season?
- 2 Why do you like it?
- 3 What are the problems?



VERB PHRASES

1A Cross out the word or phrase that is not correct.

- I like *cats/people/late*.
- You work *in pairs/the city/in an office*.
- We go *university/to English lessons/to the gym*.
- They have *a car/a problem/hungry*.
- You live *a flat/in Hong Kong/alone*.
- We study *Spanish/five hours a week/bored*.
- I drive *a sports car/work/a taxi*.
- They do *tennis/sport/homework*.

B Think of a good friend. What is the same about you and your friend? Write three sentences using the verbs above.

Sonia is a good friend from university. We both like the cinema. We are twenty-three and we work in the city.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Read your sentences.

PRESENT SIMPLE: I/YOU/WE/ THEY

2A Use the table to write four questions.

Do	you	like ... ?
	your friends	work ... ?
		read ... ?
	you and your friends	do ... ?
		live ... ?
	the other students in the class	watch ... ?
		have ... ?
		go ... ?

1 Do you and your friends watch English films?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer your questions.

PRESENT SIMPLE: HE/SHE/IT

3A Complete the sentences.

- He / not / work / hotel
He doesn't work in a hotel.
- She / live / in a flat
- He / not / like / hamburgers
- She / have / a brother
- He / not / like / shopping
- She / do / sport / at the weekend

B Work in pairs. Change *he/she* in sentences 1–6 above. Write the names of students in your class.

- Abel doesn't work in a hotel.*
- Patrizia lives in a flat.*

C Check the information with the students.

A: Abel, do you work in a hotel?

B: No, I don't.

DAYS; TIME PHRASES

4A Write the days of the week.

Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	Su
----	----	----	----	----	----	----

Monday

B Match the times 1–6 with the phrases a)–f).

- Monday, Monday, Monday c)
 - 9a.m.
 - Saturday and Sunday
 - 3p.m.
 - 9p.m.
 - Monday–Sunday
- at the weekend
 - in the evening
 - every Monday
 - in the morning
 - every day
 - in the afternoon

C Write something you do at the times in Exercise 4B.

I do sport every Monday.

D Work in pairs and take turns.

Student A: say an activity. Student B: guess the time.

A: I do sport. B: In the evening?

A: No. B: Every Monday?

A: Yes!

EVENTS

5A Add vowels to complete the events.

- f _ i _ l m
- c _ n c _ r t
- l _ s s _ n
- p _ r t y
- p l _ y
- f _ s t _ v _ l
- m _ t c h

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: choose an event and say a word to help. Student B: guess the event.

A: Shakespeare.

B: A play?

A: Yes!

TELLING THE TIME

6A Write the times in words.

- 5.45 *Quarter to six.*
- 12.30
- 7.15
- 3.00
- 3.45
- 11.15

B Write six times in numbers.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read your times. Student B: write them in numbers. Then check.

A: Half past three.

B: (writes) 2.30

A: (checks) No, it's 3.30.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about what they do for fun on ActiveBook or on the website.

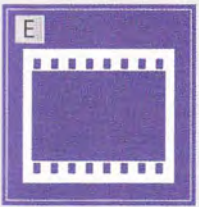
Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

LISTENING AND GRAMMAR

1A Match the words in the box with the icons.

cafés *F* clothes films people
places websites



B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: choose one icon and give an example. Student B: say the icon.

A: The King's Speech.

B: Films.

A: Correct.

B: Chris, my son.

A: People.

2A **R2.1** Listen to a woman talking about her favourite things and people. Number the icons in Exercise 1A in order.

B Listen again. How many things or people does she talk about for each icon?

Cafés ____

Clothes ____

Films ____

People 3

Places ____

Websites ____



3A Complete the sentences.

1 Alicia / be / Beth / sister

Alicia is Beth's sister.

2 William / say / Alicia / be / beautiful

3 Beth / know / Keith / from university

4 Beth / Monique / be / not / friends

5 Beth / have / red party dress

6 She / like / the BBC website

7 She / go / the Gelatino Café / every day

B Work in pairs. Which sentence in Exercise 3A is false? Check audio script Review 2.1 on page 156.

SPEAKING

4A Complete 1, 2 and 3 in the table with three words in the box.

people places restaurants cafés clothes music films animals

My favourites		
1 _____	2 _____	3 _____

B Complete your table with three things or people for each group.

C Work with other students and take turns. Ask and answer about your favourite things and people.

A: What are your groups?

B: Places, clothes, music.

A: OK. What are your favourite places?

B: Rome, Milan and London.

A: Oh, why?

B: I like cities. Rome is very old and beautiful ...

READING AND GRAMMAR

5A Read the descriptions of Keith and Alicia. What are their jobs?

My friend Keith works alone. He works from three in the afternoon to twelve at night every day, but he doesn't have time to stop or to eat. He meets people from many different countries. He goes to and from the airport five or six times every day and has about twenty different customers in his car. He also drives people around the city and knows it very well. Keith likes his job but he says he doesn't like working in the evenings and he gets very tired at the end of his day.



My sister Alicia's job isn't very difficult. On a typical day, she sits at her desk from nine to five and welcomes people when they come in. She checks their names, nationalities and car numbers and then gives them their room key. What else? She answers the phone, reads and writes emails and takes people's money when they go. She says she likes her job because every day is different but she doesn't like her work clothes: a white shirt and red trousers.



B Who says 1–8 below? Keith (K) or Alicia (A)?

- 1 No, I don't have special clothes for work. *K*
- 2 No, I don't work in an office.
- 3 Yes, I do. I speak on the phone a lot.
- 4 Yes, I use a computer in my job.
- 5 No, I don't work in the evenings.
- 6 Yes, I drive a lot in my job.

C Look again at the answers in Exercise 5B. Write the questions.

1 *Do you have special clothes for work?*

D Work in pairs. Compare your day with Keith's and Alicia's.

Keith drives in his job, but I don't. Alicia works at a desk and I do, too.

SPEAKING

6A Work in groups. Write the names of ten jobs.

B Work in groups and take turns. Student A: choose a job. Other students: ask questions to find the job.

B: Do you work in an office? A: No, I don't.

C: Do you work in a hospital? A: Yes, I do.

SOUNDS: /s/ AND /z/

7A **R2.2** Listen to the sounds and the words. Then listen and repeat.

/s/	/z/
	
cakes	coffees

B **R2.3** Listen and put the words in the box in the correct group. Then listen and repeat.

teas sparkling has sandwich euros sport
drives this



8A Work in pairs. Circle the word with a different *s* sound.

- 1 this, these, those
- 2 Jack's, Pat's, Tom's
- 3 sweater, trousers, hats
- 4 it's, he's, she's
- 5 books, bags, cups
- 6 goes, does, likes

B **R2.4** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

C Complete the rules with /s/ or /z/ for the pronunciation of *s*.

Rules:

- 1 At the beginning of words: _____
- 2 At the end of words, after /k/, /t/ and /p/: _____
- 3 At the end of words, after /d/, /m/, /g/, /v/, /l/, /n/: _____

9A Underline sixteen examples of the letter *s* in the sentences.

- 1 My son lives near the sea and the mountains.
- 2 The lamps and the clocks are in the rooms near the beds.
- 3 Can I have six eggs, please?
- 4 Sue emails her parents on Sundays.

B How is the *s* pronounced in each word? Write /s/ or /z/. Use the rules in Exercise 8C to help.

C **R2.5** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

UNIT

5

SPEAKING

- › Discuss bad habits
- › Talk about what you eat
- › Talk about your routines
- › Ask for tourist information

LISTENING

- › Listen to people say what drives them crazy
- › Listen to a tourist asking questions
- › Watch a BBC programme about Doctor Who

READING

- › Read what a sportsman and model eat
- › Read about someone's morning routine

WRITING

- › Use linkers to sequence
- › Write a forum entry

BBC content

- ▶ Video podcast: What do you usually do at the weekend?
- ▶ DVD: Doctor Who

routines



▶ Bad habits

p52



▶ Superman and supermodel

p54



▶ When does it open?

p56



▶ Doctor Who

p58

VOCABULARY daily routines

1A ▶ **5.1** Listen and match the sounds with the verbs in the box.

get up 1 go to bed have dinner
go to work have lunch get home
have breakfast

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer about your daily routines.

A: *What time do you get up?*

B: *I get up at seven o'clock. And you?*

▶▶▶ page 142–3 **PHOTOBANK**

LISTENING

▶ **speakout** TIP

Practice helps you to remember. Write seven sentences about your daily routine. Practise saying them every day.

2A Work in pairs and look at the photos. Who is angry and why?

B ▶ **5.2** Listen to the conversations and underline the correct alternative.

- 1 She talks about her *husband/ daughter/ neighbour*.
- 2 She talks about her *boyfriend/ her brother/ a person at work*.
- 3 He talks about a *person at work/ his brother/ his neighbour*.

C Listen again and tick one true sentence. Correct the false sentences.

- 1 Clara has a job.
Clara doesn't have a job.
- 2 Clara talks to her parents.
- 3 Julio listens to Paula.
- 4 Paula doesn't talk about her problems.
- 5 Wayne's neighbour works at night.
- 6 Wayne gets up at eight o'clock.

D Work in pairs. Do you have these problems with family, friends, neighbours or people at work?

A



B



GRAMMAR present simple questions: *he/she/it*

3A Complete the tables with *does* and *doesn't*.

What		it	mean?
What time	_____	she	get up?
When		he	go to bed?

	_____	she	have a job?
		he	play loud music?
Yes, he/she _____.		No, he/she _____.	

B ▶ **5.3** Look at the pronunciation of *does he/she/it* in the questions. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 What does it mean?
/dəzɪt/
- 2 When does he go to bed?
/dəzɪ/
- 3 Does she have a job?
/dəfɪ/

▶▶▶ page 126 **LANGUAGEBANK**



SPEAKING

6A Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in the quiz below. Put a tick when your partner answers yes.

B Change partners. Ask and answer the questions about your first partner.

A: Who is your person?

B: Oscar.

A: OK. Does he talk a lot and not listen?

PRACTICE

4 Add *does* in four places in each conversation.

- 1 A: What time ^{does} Mike come home in the evenings?
 B: At about eight o'clock.
 A: So, he play with the children?
 B: No, he doesn't. They go to bed at seven.
 A: And he work at the weekends?
 B: Yes, he, or he goes out and plays tennis!
- 2 A: Ana, your sister phone you on your birthday?
 B: No, she doesn't.
 A: When she phone you?
 B: On her birthday because she wants money!
 A: Really? So it drive you crazy?
 B: Yes, it.

5A Complete the questions with the verbs in the box.

like study go watch have listen do read

- 1 (he) Does he like English lessons?
 2 (she) _____ her homework every day?
 3 (he) _____ a job?
 4 (she) _____ at university?
 5 (your teacher) _____ a newspaper every day?
 6 (you) _____ to the radio?
 7 (your sister) _____ DVDs a lot?
 8 (he) _____ to parties a lot?

B Choose five questions from Exercise 5A. Add the names of students in your class.

1 Does Marcus like English lessons?

C Work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer. If you don't know, ask the person or say *I don't know*.

A: Does Marcus like English lessons?

B: I don't know. Excuse me, Marcus. Do you like English lessons?

C: Yes, I do.

B: Yes, he does. Does Rachel ...

10 bad habits that drive people crazy

Do you ...

- ☐ talk a lot and not listen?
- ☐ answer the phone all the time?
- ☐ stay in the bathroom for hours?
- ☐ talk in films?
- ☐ eat on trains?
- ☐ sing in the bathroom?
- ☐ copy other people's work (e.g. homework)?
- ☐ play very loud music in the car or at home?
- ☐ smoke?
- ☐ drive very fast?

VOCABULARY food



1A Match the words with photos A–L.

- 1 pasta K
- 2 steak
- 3 chicken
- 4 chips
- 5 fish
- 6 fruit
- 7 vegetables
- 8 bread
- 9 cereal
- 10 eggs
- 11 cheese
- 12 sugar

B Write the number of syllables (1, 2 or 3) next to each word.

1 pasta 2

C 5.4 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

2 Work in pairs and take turns to ask questions. What food do you both like?

A: I like steak. Do you?

B: No, I don't. Do you like pasta?

A: Yes, I do.

page 143 PHOTOBANK

READING

3A Discuss in pairs. What do you know about the two people in the photos? What food do you think they eat?

B Read the texts and answer the questions. Write M (Michael), H (Heidi) or MH (Michael and Heidi).

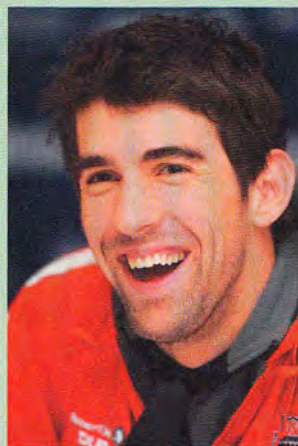
Who ...

- 1 eats a lot? MH
- 2 talks about steak and chicken?
- 3 thinks it's important to eat healthy food?
- 4 has a big breakfast?
- 5 doesn't eat a lot of vegetables and fruit?
- 6 eats a lot of Italian food?

Michael Phelps Swimmer

I love food! I need about 12,000 calories a day, so I have a big breakfast – usually three fried egg sandwiches, a five-egg omelette and three pieces of French toast* with sugar. For lunch I have the same thing every day; I always have a big plate of pasta, and two very big cheese sandwiches. For dinner I have another big plate of pasta and a whole pizza. I don't often eat vegetables or fruit.

*toast: cooked bread



Heidi Klum Supermodel

I'm never hungry because I eat a lot. In the morning, I usually have a big breakfast with fruit and cereal, and for lunch I eat a lot of vegetables, but in the evening I only have a small dinner. I often eat chicken, but I don't often eat red meat (I have steak maybe once a week) and I sometimes eat fish, maybe two or three times a week. I never eat chips because of my job. It's important for me to look good and be healthy.



C Read the texts again. Is this the food for Michael or Heidi?

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun
chicken	✓		✓		✓	✓	
chips							
fish		✓		✓			
fruit	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
pizza							
steak							✓
vegetables	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		

D Discuss in pairs. Is your diet similar to Michael's or Heidi's?

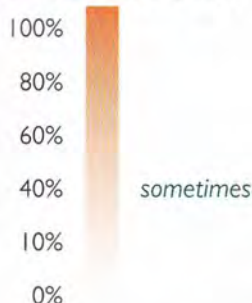
GRAMMAR

adverbs of frequency

4A Underline the words in the box in the texts on page 54.

sometimes always never often
not often usually

B Put the words in the box in the correct place on the line below. Use the texts and the chart in Exercise 3 to help you.



C **5.5** Listen and underline the stress in the adverbs. Then listen and repeat.

always

D Look at sentences 1–3. Underline the correct alternative in the rules.

- I'm never hungry because I eat a lot.
- I usually have a big breakfast ...
- I don't often eat red meat.

Rules:

- The adverb goes *before/after* the verb *be*.
- The adverb goes *before/after* other verbs.

page 126 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

5A Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- have / usually / I / Fridays / on / fish
1 I usually have fish on Fridays.
- eat / never / I / sweets
- hungry / I'm / never
- eat / often / chicken / I
- home / dinner / for / usually / I'm
- fruit / eat / don't / I / often
- have / sometimes / I / lunch / for / vegetables
- I / eat / Sundays / steak / always / on

B Work in pairs. Which sentences are true for you? Change the other sentences to make them true.

SPEAKING

6A Read the sentences below. Complete them with *always* (A), *usually* (U), *sometimes* (S), *not often* (NO) and *never* (N).

In the morning, I ...

- ☐ have a coffee before breakfast.
- ☐ have a big breakfast.
- ☐ make a sandwich for lunch.
- ☐ read my emails.
- ☐ drive to work/school.

In the evening, I ...

- ☐ cook dinner for my family.
- ☐ eat after eight o'clock.
- ☐ watch about two hours' TV.
- ☐ go out with friends.
- ☐ have a hot drink before I go to bed.

B Work in pairs and compare your answers. Find two things the same.

A: I never have a coffee before breakfast. What about you?

B: I never drink coffee.

WRITING

linkers to sequence

7A Read the description. Is it similar to your morning?

My morning

Every day I get up at six. First, I make a black coffee, and I read my emails. Then I have breakfast and listen to the radio. I usually have cereal and coffee but I sometimes have toast and an egg. After that, I often read the news online. Finally, at half past eight I go to work. I always walk to work because it's only fifteen minutes to my office. At work I have another coffee and sometimes a cake.

B Read the description again and number the linkers in order.

then first 1 finally after that

C Which linker does not have a comma after it?

8A Write a description of your typical morning. Use linkers and write 60–80 words.

B Read other students' descriptions. Are they similar to your morning?

5.3

► **FUNCTION** | asking for information

► **VOCABULARY** | hotel services

► **LEARN TO** | show interest

VOCABULARY hotel services

1A Look at the photos. Which services in the box are in photos A–D?

restaurant gym café gift shop
money exchange hairdresser's
swimming pool guided tour

B Match the services from the box with activities 1–8.

- 1 have dinner *restaurant*
- 2 change money
- 3 get a haircut
- 4 do exercise
- 5 have a coffee
- 6 go swimming
- 7 buy gifts
- 8 see the town

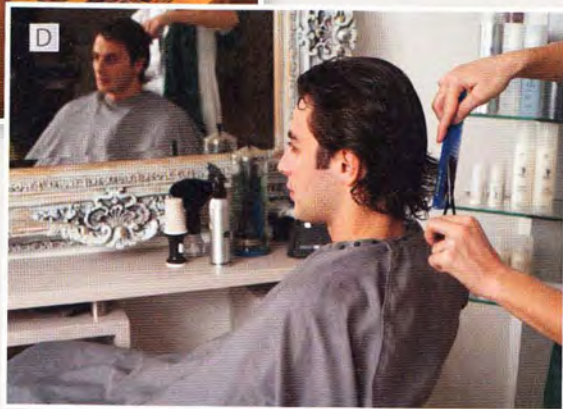
C Discuss in pairs. Which two services are important in a hotel? Which two aren't important?

FUNCTION asking for information

2A  **5.6** Listen to the conversations. Which four services does the woman ask about?

- 1 gym
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____

B Listen again. Find and correct the five mistakes in the woman's notes.



gym: 6a.m.-9p.m.,
closes: 12-1

breakfast: 6.30-9.00 - in
café

hairdresser's: 10-6;
Tuesdays to 8p.m;
closes Mondays.

guided tour: 9a.m. and
2p.m. €50.

3A  **5.7** Complete the sentences. Then listen and check.

- 1 When does the gym open?
- 2 It _____ from 6a.m. to 10p.m.
- 3 What _____ is breakfast?
- 4 From half past six _____ nine o'clock.
- 5 _____ you have a hairdresser's in the hotel?
- 6 Yes, it opens _____ day except Monday.
- 7 When _____ the tour leave?
- 8 It _____ at 9a.m. and at 3p.m.
- 9 How much does it _____?
- 10 _____ costs fifteen euros.

B Listen again and underline the stressed words. Then listen and repeat.

1 When does the gym open?

page 126 LANGUAGEBANK



4A Complete the conversation.

Student A

Student B

When / gift shop / open?

10a.m.–8p.m.

swimming pool / open / all day?

Yes, it / open 6a.m.–9p.m. but it / close 12–1p.m.

How much / guided tour / cost / for children?

It / be / free / for children.

When / it / leave?

It / leave / 10a.m.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Practise the conversation.

LEARN TO show interest

5A ▶ 5.8 Listen to parts of the conversation. Number the words in the order you hear them.

Great. Oh, good. That's good. Lovely. 1 That's great. Wonderful.

speakout TIP

When someone gives information, we often say *Great*, *Lovely*, etc. to show interest or say *Thank you*. What do you say in your language?

B ▶ 5.9 Listen to the intonation. Which person is interested?

1 Great. 2 Great.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a phrase. Student B: say *interested* or *not interested*.

A: Oh, good. B: Not interested.

SPEAKING

6A Work in pairs. You are tourists at a hotel in Prague. Make questions about the times and/or the prices.

You want to:

- change money.
- have coffee at Café Slavia or Café Milena.
- have lunch at the hotel.
- go on a guided tour of Prague.
- go to the opera.

What time does the money exchange open?

B Work with a new partner. Student A: you are the tourist. Ask Student B your questions and write the answers. Student B: turn to page 150 and answer the questions.

C Change roles. Student A: turn to page 153 and answer the questions. Student B: ask your questions and write the answers.

D Check your partner's information. Is it correct?

DVD PREVIEW

1A Match the words in the box with photos A–F.

The London Eye F Big Ben fish fingers
custard The O2 Stadium beans



B Read the programme information and answer the questions.

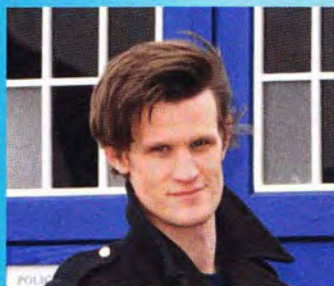
- 1 Where is Doctor Who from?
- 2 What's the name of his time machine?
- 3 What's the Doctor's problem?

BBC Doctor Who

Doctor Who is the number one science fiction television programme of all time. The Doctor isn't from this world. He's an alien. He travels in time and space in his time machine, the TARDIS, a blue 1950s British police box.

In this episode the Doctor has a new body.

He's very hungry and a little girl gives him food. But what food does he like? He doesn't know.



DVD VIEW

2A Watch the DVD. Tick the items in the DVD. Which item is not in the DVD?

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Doctor Who | 6 an English house |
| 2 The London Eye | 7 custard |
| 3 Big Ben | 8 a banana |
| 4 the TARDIS | 9 fish fingers |
| 5 The O2 Stadium | 10 beans |

B Work in pairs and underline the correct alternative. Then watch the DVD again to check your answers.

- 1 'Can I have an *carrot*/*apple*? All I can think about ... *carrots/apples*. I love *carrots/apples*.'
- 2 'No, no, no, I love *yoghurt*/*custard*. *Yoghurt's*/*Custard's* my favourite. Give me *yoghurt*/*custard*.'
- 3 Ah. You see? *Carrots*/*Beans*.
Carrots/Beans are evil. Bad, bad *carrots/beans*.
- 4 A: I've got some *carrots/apples*.
B: *Carrots/Apples*? Are you insane? No, wait, hang on, I know what I need, I need, I need, I need ..., fish fingers and *yoghurt*/*custard*.

C Work in pairs. How do they feel? Write D (the Doctor) or G (girl) or N (no-one).

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 1 afraid | 5 happy |
| 2 unhappy | 6 angry |
| 3 surprised | 7 tired |
| 4 bored | |

spekout desert island food

3A Read the food forum and write your list.

You have 10 years on a desert island. The island has fresh water but no food. What types of food and drink do you take with you? The maximum is 5 types of food and 2 drinks. Send us your list!



B 5.10 Listen to a woman talking about her list. What food and drink does she talk about?

C Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

What's on your list?

Number (one/two/three) on my list is ...

It's important to have ...

I really like ...

It's (good/bad) for you ...

Do you really like ... ?

Me too.

Really?

What about drinks?

I don't like (it/fruit/eggs)

I like (it/fruit/eggs) too.

4A Work in pairs and take turns to talk about your lists. Use the key phrases to help.

B Work in groups and take turns. One student: talk about your list. Other students: listen and ask one question.

writeback a forum entry

5A Read the reply to the forum question.

Then work in pairs and discuss the questions.

1 Are these things on your list?

2 Which things on the list don't you like?

My food is very simple because I don't cook, and I love sandwiches.

Here's my list:

bread – I eat sandwiches every day, and I need bread for sandwiches.

cheese – A cheese sandwich is easy to make.

sausages – I think meat is important, and I love sausages. Sausages are also good in a sandwich.

apples – I don't like apples but they're good for you. Apples are good with cheese too.

tomatoes – They're my favourite food, and great on sandwiches!

coffee – I start every day with a black coffee.

orange juice – Very important for vitamin C!

B Write your list and give one reason for each item on your list.



DAILY ROUTINES

1A Add vowels to complete the daily routines.

- 1 g _ o _ t _ b _ d
- 2 h _ v _ br _ _ kf _ st
- 3 g _ t _ p
- 4 g _ t h _ m _
- 5 g _ t _ w _ rk
- 6 h _ v _ l _ nch
- 7 h _ v _ d _ nn _ r

B Work in pairs and take turns. Cover the verbs. Student A: say the first routine people do every day. Student B: repeat the first routine and say the next routine.

A: get up

B: get up, have breakfast

PRESENT SIMPLE: QUESTIONS

2A Complete the questions.

- 1 When / he / get up?
When does he get up?
- 2 she / like / coffee / or / tea?

- 3 What time / he / go / to work?

- 4 What / she / have / for lunch?

- 5 he / have / a car?

- 6 When / she / get home?

- 7 she / study / at the weekend?

- 8 he / phone / you / every day?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: ask questions. Student B: answer about a person in your family or a friend.

A: Who is your person?

B: My wife, Vanessa.

A: OK. When does she get up?

FOOD

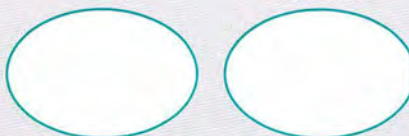
3A Put the letters in the correct order to make food words. The first letter is underlined.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 g <u>s</u> eg eggs | 7 hkei <u>c</u> nc |
| 2 e <u>c</u> rela | 8 u <u>f</u> tir |
| 3 ead <u>r</u> b | 9 e <u>c</u> eseh |
| 4 rug <u>a</u> s | 10 spa <u>t</u> |
| 5 isph <u>c</u> | 11 h <u>s</u> fi |
| 6 kea <u>t</u> s | 12 <u>v</u> ealbeetgs |

B Write three foods in each circle.

I like

I don't like



I don't eat



C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say one of your foods. Student B: guess if Student A likes it, doesn't like it or doesn't eat it.

A: Steak.

B: You don't like it.

A: No, I don't eat it.

ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

4A Find and correct the mistakes. One sentence is correct.

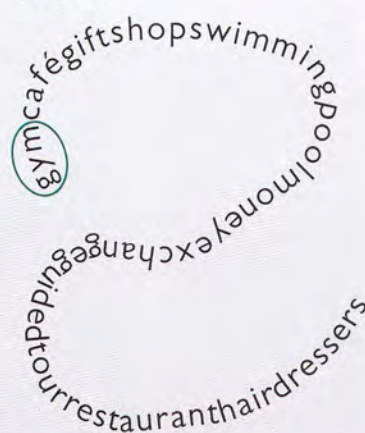
- 1 We speak English together always in class.
- 2 I usually do my homework.
- 3 I'm late never for English lessons.
- 4 I not often watch English videos.
- 5 My English teacher says often 'Good!'
- 6 I read an online English newspaper never.

B Tick the sentences that are true for you. Change the others to make them true. Then compare with a partner.

- 1 We don't always speak English together in class. We sometimes speak Italian.

HOTEL SERVICES

5 Find and circle eight hotel services.



ASKING FOR INFORMATION

6A Look at the times of the hotel services. Complete questions 1–4.

- 1 What time _____ the gym close?
- 2 When _____ the café open?
- 3 _____ does the gift shop open _____ Mondays?
- 4 _____ does the swimming pool open and close?

B Work alone. Complete the timetable a)–d) with times.

Hotel services

- a) **gym** 8a.m.– _____
Mon–Sat (Sun)
- b) **café** _____ –10p.m.
Mon–Sun
- c) **gift shop** 11a.m.–7p.m.
Tue–Sun (Mon)
- d) **swimming pool**
_____ – _____ (Mon–Sun)

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions 1–4.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about their weekend routines on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

UNIT 6

UNIT

6

SPEAKING

- › Find differences in lifestyles
- › Ask and answer questions about transport
- › Buy a ticket for travel
- › Talk about travel in your country

LISTENING

- › Listen to a man stuck at a station
- › Listen to someone buy a bus ticket
- › Watch a BBC programme about rush hour in India

READING

- › Read some fun facts about transport

WRITING

- › Start and end emails
- › Write in a travel forum

BBC content

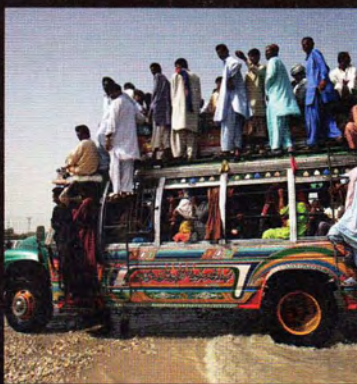
- ▶ Video podcast: How do you get to school or work?
- ▶ DVD: Visions of India: Rush Hour

journeys



▶ No trains

p62



▶ Getting there

p64



▶ Single or return?

p66



▶ Rush Hour



VOCABULARY places

1A Match the words in the box with pictures A–H.

internet café C newsagent's hotel
snack bar restaurant pharmacy
payphone cash machine



B ▶ 6.1 Listen to places A–H and underline the stressed syllable(s). Then listen and repeat.
internet café

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer about the pictures in Exercise 1A.

A: What's G?

B: It's a cash machine. What's ... ?

▶▶▶ page 144 **PHOTOBANK**

LISTENING

2A Look at the photo. What's the problem? Do you like train travel? What is good and what is bad about it?

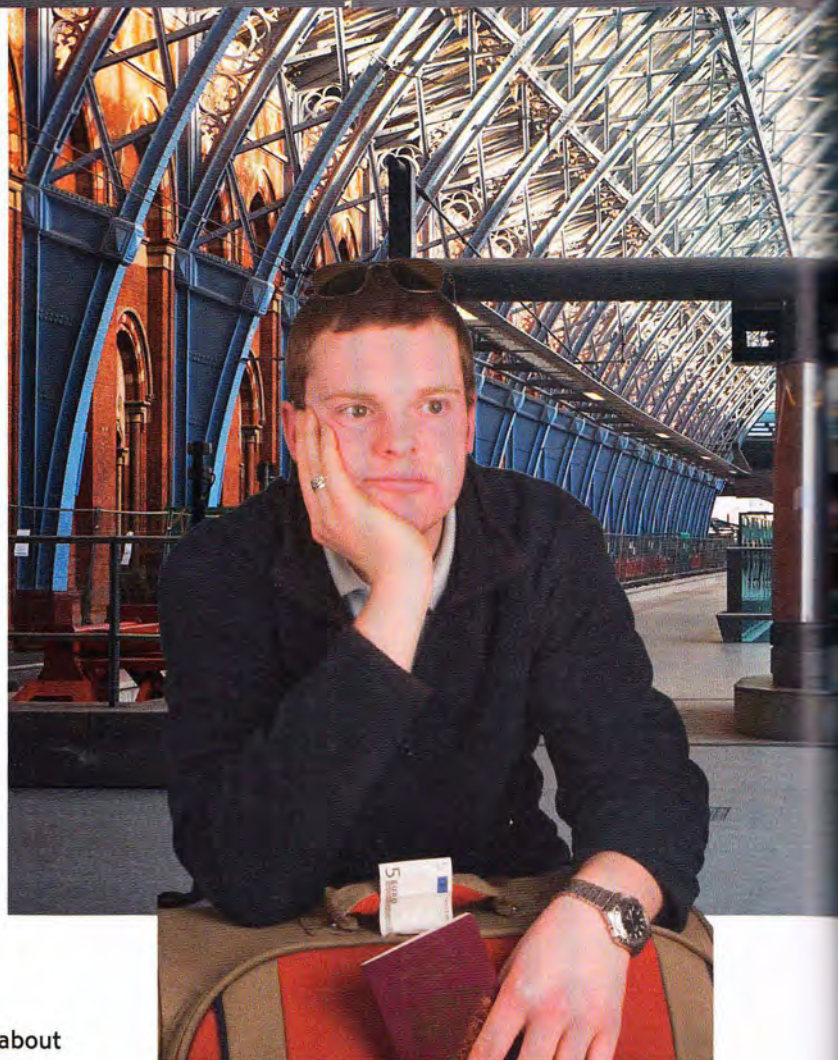
B ▶ 6.2 Listen to the conversations and number the places in Exercise 1A in the order you hear them. Two places are not in the conversations.
payphone 1

C Listen again and underline the correct alternative.

- The weather is *cold/bad*.
- The man's phone is *dead/broken*.
- The internet café *is/isn't* in the station.
- The restaurants are *closed/expensive*.
- The Charlotte Street Hotel is *full/expensive*.

speakout TIP

Before you do an exercise, check new words. Try to guess the meaning, ask your teacher or another student or check in your dictionary.



GRAMMAR there is/are

3A Complete the tables with the words in the box.

's Are There are Is there aren't

+	There	1 <u>'s</u>	a payphone over there.
		2 _____	two hotels near here.
–	3 _____	isn't	an internet café.
		4 _____	any trains.

?	5 _____ 6 _____	there	a train to Paris tonight?
			any restaurants in the station?

+	Yes,	7 _____	is are.
–	No,		isn't. aren't.

B ▶ 6.3 Listen and check.

C Listen again and underline the main stress in each sentence. Then listen and repeat.

▶▶▶ page 128 **LANGUAGEBANK**



SPEAKING

6 Work in pairs. Student A: look at the picture on page 151. Student B: look at the picture on page 153.

WRITING starting and ending an email

7A Read the email. Is the email to the woman's manager, friend or husband?

Hi Ron,
I have good news and bad news. There aren't any trains tonight because the weather's very bad. That's the bad news. So what's the good news? I'm in a very good hotel and there's a nice restaurant, too. Yes, it's expensive, but I have the company credit card.
Give the children a goodnight kiss from me. See you tomorrow.
Love,
Clare

B Complete the table with phrases for starting and ending an email.

Hi Valentina, Best wishes, Love, Hello, Take care,
Dear Jack, See you soon, Dear Mr Wilson,
Regards,

	to a boyfriend/ girlfriend/ husband/wife	to a friend	to your manager
Start	Hi Valentina,	Hi Valentina,	
End		Best wishes,	Best wishes,

PRACTICE

4A Complete the sentences about a class with *There's*, *There are*, *There isn't* or *There aren't*.

- There are three students with black shoes. (+)
- _____ one person with a red T-shirt. (+)
- _____ a whiteboard. (-)
- _____ two women in this room. (+)
- _____ a book on the teacher's desk. (+)
- _____ any dictionaries. (-)

B Work in pairs. Which sentences are true about your class?

5A Work in pairs. Student A: write questions about places near the class. Student B: write questions about places near Student A's home.

- snack bar?
Is there a snack bar near here?
- internet café?
- pharmacy?
- any restaurants?
- cash machine?
- any clothes shops?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

A: *Is there a snack bar near here?*

B: *Yes, there's a good snack bar. It's two minutes from here.
Its name is ...*

8A Work in pairs. Which problems often happen to you when you travel by plane?

plane is late

no planes

no ticket

you're ill

food is expensive

no passport

no restaurants

B Choose two of the problems above. Write an email from the airport to a friend or to your manager. Write about your problems.

C Read other students' emails. Which situation is really bad?

6.2 GETTING THERE

► **GRAMMAR** | *a/an, some, a lot of, not any*

► **VOCABULARY** | transport

► **HOW TO** | talk about transport

VOCABULARY transport

1A Write the transport words in the box under pictures A–H.

bus train plane taxi underground
car bike motorbike



A bus



B _____



C _____



D _____



E _____



F _____



G _____



H _____

B Work in pairs and answer the questions.

- How do you come to class?
By bus or sometimes I walk.
- What's your favourite type of transport?
Motorbike.
- What type of transport do you never use?
I never use a bike.

READING

2A Read the text. Which fact is not true?

B Write the name of the place or transport.

- It doesn't have any stations. *Bhutan*
- It's the number one place for bikes.
- In London, they're usually black.
- It's a noisy place to play.
- Men don't use these.
- They have two floors and stairs.

C Work in pairs and discuss. Which facts are surprising?

It's surprising that there are taxis for women. It's a good idea.



Transport facts...

More and more people are on the move. From Moscow to Beijing, and from Amsterdam to Thailand, we look at transport facts around the world.

There are 3 million cars in Moscow and 22 pink taxis. The pink taxis are for women and the drivers are women.

There are double-decker buses in the UK, Germany, Hong Kong and Singapore. There are double-decker trains in a lot of countries including Switzerland, Australia and the USA.

4.3 million people go by subway (underground) every day in New York City.

There aren't any trains in the country of Bhutan in Asia.

In Saudi Arabia some hotels have London taxis but they are white not black.

In China people often sit in the front seat of taxis.

People usually travel around Venice by car.

In Thailand, there's an airport with a golf course in it.

Amsterdam is the bike capital of the world. 40% of travel in this city is by bike.



GRAMMAR *a/an, some, a lot of, not any*

3A Look at the sentences. Match the words in bold with pictures A–D.

- In Thailand, there's **an** airport with a golf course in it. *B*
- There are double-decker trains in **a lot of** countries.
- There **aren't any** trains in the country of Bhutan.
- In Saudi Arabia **some** hotels have London taxis.

A



B



C



D



B Complete the table with 's, are, isn't or aren't.

+	There	_____	a	train at four o'clock.
		_____	some	buses this afternoon.
		_____	a lot of	taxis.
–	There	_____	an	airport here.
		_____	any	cars in the centre.

C 6.4 Listen and check.

D Listen again and underline the stressed words. Then listen and repeat.

page 128 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

4A Underline the correct alternative.

- There's a/an airport.
- There are some/any stations.
- There aren't a lot/any taxis.
- There are a lot/some of motorbikes.
- There isn't a/some bus station.
- There are any/some buses at night.
- There aren't some/any problems with cars in the centre.
- There are any/a lot of bikes.

B Work alone. Make the sentences true for your town/city or a town/city you know.

C Work in pairs and take turns to ask questions. Student A: you are a visitor to the town/city.

A: Is there an airport?

B: Yes, there are two airports.



SPEAKING

5A Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 150. Student B: ask questions to complete the information for Venice and London.

B: Is there a train from the airport to Venice?

A: No, there isn't.

	Venice	London (Heathrow)
train / from the airport?		
underground?		
airport bus?		
other information?		

B Change roles. Student B: answer Student A's questions about Barcelona and Edinburgh.

A: Is there a train from the airport to Barcelona?

B: Yes, there is. It's three euros.

	Barcelona	Edinburgh
train / from the airport?	€3	no
underground?	yes but not from the airport	no
airport bus?	€5	£4
other information?	taxi, €30	taxi, £15

C What's the best way to go from the airport to the centre in these four cities?



6.3 SINGLE OR RETURN?

FUNCTION | buying a ticket

VOCABULARY | travel

LEARN TO | check numbers



VOCABULARY travel

1A Work in pairs. Do you like long bus journeys? Why/Why not?

B Look at the words in the box. Which things can you see in the photos?

passenger ticket office gate
single (ticket) return (ticket)
monthly pass

C Work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer.

A: What's this?

B: It's a gate. What's ... ?

FUNCTION buying a ticket

2 6.5 Listen to the conversation at a bus station and tick the correct answer.

- 1 She wants:
 - a) a single b) a return c) two returns
- 2 She wants a ticket for:
 - a) today b) tomorrow c) today and tomorrow
- 3 It costs:
 - a) €25 b) €29 c) €39
- 4 It leaves at:
 - a) 2.30 b) 2.15 c) 3.30
- 5 It arrives at:
 - a) 3.15 b) 4.15 c) 4.45

3A 6.6 Complete the conversation. Then listen and check.

Student A

Student B

A ticket ¹ _____ Amsterdam, please.

Single or return?

Return, ² _____.

Leaving today?

Yes.

When do you want to ³ _____ back?

Tomorrow afternoon.

OK. That's twenty-nine euros.

What time's the ⁴ _____ bus?

There's one at half past two.

What time ⁵ _____ it arrive in Amsterdam?

At quarter past four. Here's your ticket.

⁶ _____ a lot.

The bus leaves ⁷ _____ gate twenty-four.

B Listen again and say the sentences at the same time.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Practise the conversation.



LEARN TO check numbers

4A **6.7** Listen and underline the stressed syllable in the numbers.

B: The bus leaves from gate twenty-four.

A: Sorry? Gate thirty-four?

B: No, gate twenty-four.

A: Thanks a lot.

B Listen again and repeat.

speakout TIP

Use stress to check and correct numbers. *Sorry, fifty-five?*
No, *fifty-nine*.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Practise the conversations.

1 A: That's €250.

B: Sorry? 240?

A: No, 250.

2 B: It's bus number 72.

A: Sorry? 72?

B: Yes, that's right. 72.

3 A: The train leaves at 5 o'clock.

B: Sorry? 9 o'clock?

A: No, 5 o'clock.

5A Write down two prices, two train times and two bus numbers. Don't show your partner.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read your numbers fast. Student B: repeat the numbers to check.

A: *Two dollars and forty cents.*

B: *Sorry? Ten dollars and forty cents?*

A: *No, two dollars and forty cents.*

SPEAKING

6A Work in pairs. Student A: look at the information below. Student B: turn to page 150.

Student A: you are at a bus station in Amsterdam. You want to buy a ticket. Ask Student B questions to complete the table.

ticket	a single to Brussels
price	
time of next bus	
gate	
arrival time	

B Change roles. Student A: you work in a ticket office in the central train station in Amsterdam. Look at the information and answer Student B's questions.

ticket	a return to Paris
price	€174
time of next train	8.30a.m.
platform	6
arrival time	12.45p.m.

DVD PREVIEW

1A What do you know about India? Look at the words in the box below. Cross out the one which is not in or from India.

- 1 Karachi, Mumbai, Delhi
- 2 Mahatma Gandhi, Omar Sharif, Mother Teresa
- 3 Bollywood, coffee, yoga
- 4 River Ganges, Taj Mahal, Machu Picchu
- 5 daal, nan, tempura

B Read the programme information and look at the photos. How do people go to work and school in India?

BBC Visions Of India: Rush Hour

Each programme in the BBC's *Visions Of India* shows a different side of this country of one billion people. This programme looks at how millions of working Indians travel to work and school every day.



DVD VIEW

2A Watch the DVD to check your ideas in Exercise 1B.

B Complete the sentences with the adjectives in the box below.

popular crowded slow dangerous noisy expensive

- 1 A lot of people like it. It's popular.
- 2 It isn't quiet. It's _____.
- 3 It costs a lot. It's _____.
- 4 It isn't safe. It's _____.
- 5 It has a lot of people. It's _____.
- 6 It isn't fast. It's _____.

C Watch the DVD again and underline the adjectives you hear for each type of transport.

- 1 trains – crowded, popular, noisy
- 2 bikes – dangerous, fast, slow
- 3 motorbikes – fast, noisy, dangerous
- 4 tuk-tuks – popular, fast, noisy
- 5 taxis – fast, safe, expensive



speakout a travel survey

3A Work in pairs and discuss. How do people in your country travel in cities and in the countryside?

B  **6.8** Listen to a student describe travel in his country and complete the table.

in a big city	in the countryside
1	1
2	2
3	3

C Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

I live in (London) but I'm from (the countryside).

There's a good public transport system.

(A lot of/Some people) use (the underground/buses).

Some people go to work by (bus/bike).

The best way to travel is by (car/underground).

People also go by (bus).

In (my village/the city), I go everywhere by (car/bike).

4A Work with a new partner and talk about the different ways people travel in your country. Use the key phrases to help.

B Work in groups and tell other students.

writeback a travel forum entry

5A A travel website asks people to write about transport in their town/city. Read the forum entry. How does the writer usually travel?

I live in Kobe, Japan and I work in Osaka. I think the best way to travel is by train. I go by the JR train line every morning. There are sometimes ten trains every hour. It's about thirty minutes from Kobe to Osaka. I have a monthly pass but I think a single ticket is about 500 yen.

In Kobe, people travel by car, but there's a good public transport system, so a lot of people use buses and the underground. A one-day tourist pass is 1,000 yen. I live near the centre so I usually walk everywhere. Kobe is a small city, and it's a good city for walkers.

B Write about transport in your town/city or a town/city you know for the travel website. Write 80–100 words.



PLACES

1A Add the vowels to the places.

- 1 i n t e r n e t c a f e
- 2 r s t r n t
- 3 p h r m c y
- 4 n w s g n t 's
- 5 p y p h n
- 6 c s h m c h n
- 7 h t l
- 8 s n c k b r

B Work in pairs. Write a thing/activity connected to the places above.

internet café – email

C Work in groups. Student A: say one thing/activity. Other students: guess the place.

A: Email.

B: Internet café.

A: That's right.

THERE IS/ARE

2A Complete the questions asked in a hotel with *Is there* or *Are there*.

- 1 Is there a swimming pool?
- 2 Are there a restaurant in the hotel?
- 3 Are there two beds in my room?
- 4 Are there a guided tour of the city tomorrow?
- 5 Are there any cash machines near the hotel?
- 6 Are there any other hotels near here?

B Match answers a)–f) with the questions above.

- a) No, _____, but the city isn't very interesting.
- b) Yes, _____ but they're all full.
- c) Yes, _____, but the water is very cold.
- d) Yes, _____, but it's closed now. It's open for dinner.
- e) No, _____ only one bed.
- f) No, _____, but _____ one in the hotel.

C Complete the answers above with *there is/s, there are, there isn't or there aren't*.

TRANSPORT

3A Circle eight transport words.

Q	P	B	H	I	U	M
B	U	S	F	H	N	O
I	A	S	N	B	D	T
K	P	L	A	N	E	O
E	E	G	J	T	R	R
K	Z	Y	G	Z	G	B
E	O	K	R	E	R	I
T	R	A	E	N	O	K
A	T	R	C	U	U	E
X	T	R	A	I	N	H
I	W	S	R	S	D	K

B Work in groups and take turns. Student A: draw a picture of one of the things in Exercise 3A. Other students: guess what it is.

A/AN, SOME, A LOT OF, NOT ANY

4A Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

In this book:

- 1 A lot ^{of} pages don't have photos.
- 2 Some page have six photos.
- 3 There's an Spanish word on page 6.
- 4 There's blue glove on page 32.

B Work in pairs. Which sentences above are true? Change the others to make them true.

C Work in pairs. Write four more sentences about the book, but only one true sentence. Use *a/an, some, a lot of* and *not any*.

D Work in groups and take turns to read out your sentences. Which sentences are true?

TRAVEL

5 Complete the words.

- 1 You buy a ticket at the ticket of _____.
- 2 The people on the bus are pas _____s.
- 3 The bus leaves from a ga _____.
- 4 A ticket from A to B is a si _____.
- 5 A ticket from A to B to A is a re _____.
- 6 A ticket for four weeks is a mo _____ pass.

BUYING A TICKET

6A Complete the conversation.

A: ¹single / Lisbon, / please.
A single to Lisbon, please.

B: For when?

A: ²I / want / go / tomorrow morning.

B: OK. That's €39.

A: ³What time / first bus?

B: There's one at 10.40.

A: ⁴What time / it / arrive / Lisbon?

B: At 12.15.

A: ⁵Where / it / leave / from?

B: It leaves from gate 34.

A: ⁶Thanks / lot.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about how they get to school or work on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

READING AND GRAMMAR

1A Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

When you have a problem, do you usually:

- talk to people in your family about it?
- talk to one or two friends about it?
- phone or email a lot of people about it?
- look on the internet?
- write to a website about it?
- think about it alone?

B Read the text. Match answers a)–c) with problems 1–3.



QUICK ANSWERS

You tell us your problem and other people answer

1 My problem is I'm always tired. I work in a snack bar from seven in the morning to six in the evening. I drink a lot of cups of coffee at work because I'm tired. I never have breakfast but I usually have a sandwich and a cake for lunch. I don't often go out in the evenings because I'm tired. **Jon**

2 My husband does nothing in the house. I often get home after work and there isn't any food in the flat so I always buy food and cook. He says he isn't hungry and he doesn't want a big dinner. He wants to sit down and watch TV all evening. I think it's important to have dinner together and talk. **Layla**

3 There are a lot of beautiful places in the world but I never see them. My problem is I don't like travelling by plane, train, boat or car so I never go on holiday. **Rob**

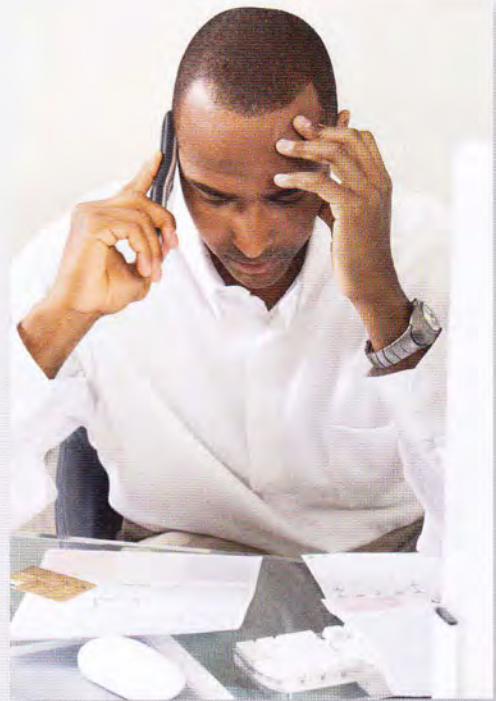
a) How about bikes? Try a cycling holiday.

b) It's important to sit down and talk.

c) Change your job!

C Work in pairs and read the text again. Write your answers to the three people.

1 After work, go to the gym and do exercise. It's good for you.



2A Put the words in the correct order to make questions about the three people.

1a) Jon / breakfast / Does / have?

Does Jon have breakfast?

b) evenings / go / in / Does / he / out / the?

2a) buy / the / Layla / food / Does?

b) her / home / husband / What / at / does / do?

3a) there / planes / Is / problem / a / with?

b) does / on / holiday / Rob / When / go?

B Match answers 1–6 with questions 1a)–3b) above.

1 No, not often. 1b

2 Yes, she does.

3 Yes, there is.

4 No, he doesn't but he has lunch.

5 Nothing.

6 He doesn't. He always stays at home.

REVIEW 3: UNITS 5–6

LISTENING AND GRAMMAR

3A **R3.1** Listen and match conversations 1–5 with the places in the box. Where is each person? You do not need to use one of the places.

snack bar	1	pharmacy	cash machine	newsagent's	payphone
internet café					

B Listen again and underline the correct alternative.

	What's the problem?	What happens?
1	The coffee isn't <u>hot</u> / good.	She gets a tea / another coffee.
2	The shop <i>never has</i> / <i>doesn't have</i> the New York Times.	He <i>buys</i> / <i>doesn't buy</i> another paper.
3	The cash machine <i>doesn't have money</i> / <i>is broken</i> .	<i>She</i> / <i>Salvatore</i> has some money.
4	Computer number <i>three</i> / <i>five</i> is broken.	He <i>goes to another computer</i> / <i>leaves</i> .
5	He's <i>cold</i> / <i>ill</i> .	He <i>buys</i> / <i>doesn't buy</i> something for it.

SPEAKING

4A Work in pairs. Look at audio script Review 3.1 on page 158. Choose one of the conversations and practise it.

B Write six to eight keywords to help you remember the conversations.

A:	B:
Excuse	Yeah
problem, coffee, cold	Sorry, let me ...

C Role-play the situation. Use the keywords to help.

5A Work in pairs. Choose a place from Exercise 3A and a problem. Answer the questions.

- Where are you?
 - Who are you?
 - What's the problem?
- 1 newsagent's
2 customer and shop assistant
3 I want a newspaper and I only have a 20-euro note

B Role-play a conversation between the two people in the place.

C Work in groups and take turns to listen to other students' conversations. What place are they in?

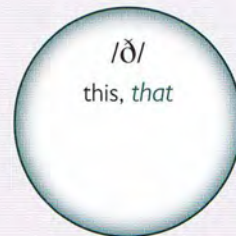
SOUNDS: /ð/ AND /θ/

6A **R3.2** Listen to the sounds and the words. Then listen and repeat.

/ð/	/θ/
	3
this	three

B **R3.3** Listen and put the words in the box in the correct group. Then listen and repeat.

thanks	that	monthly	thirsty	father
with	think	these	together	thirteen



7A **R3.4** Listen and circle the correct pronunciation.

- | | | |
|-------------|----|----|
| 1 together | a) | b) |
| 2 think | a) | b) |
| 3 these | a) | b) |
| 4 thirsty | a) | b) |
| 5 father | a) | b) |
| 6 the | a) | b) |
| 7 thank you | a) | b) |
| 8 three | a) | b) |
| 9 brother | a) | b) |
| 10 month | a) | b) |

B Work in pairs and take turns. Say the sentences slowly.

- These three brothers are dirty and thirsty.
- They say thanks for the time together.
- There are three big airports in South Africa.

C Work in pairs. Say each sentence at the same time. Speak fast.

UNIT 7

UNIT

7

SPEAKING

- › Find out where people were in the past
- › Talk about the past
- › Give your opinion
- › Do a history quiz

LISTENING

- › Listen to people talk about New Year 2000
- › Listen to people give opinions
- › Watch a BBC programme about the Chilean miners

READING

- › Read about amazing records

WRITING

- › Improve your punctuation
- › Write a history quiz

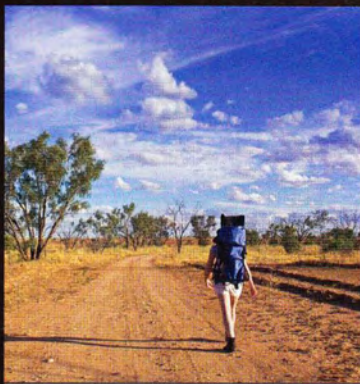
BBC CONTENT

- ▶ Video podcast: Where were you on your last birthday?
- ▶ DVD: The Chilean Miners

past



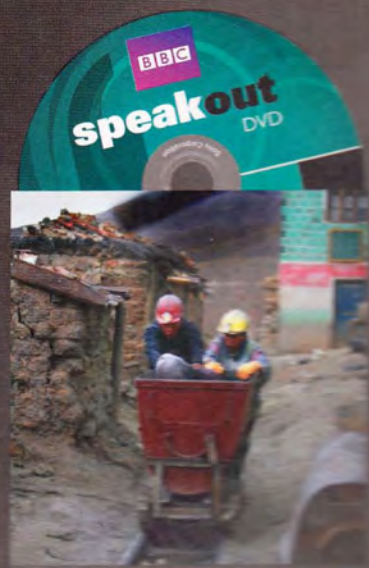
▶ Where were you? p74



▶ Record breakers p76



▶ How was it? p78



▶ The Chilean Miners p80



LISTENING

1A Work in pairs and look at the photos. What time of year is it? What do you usually do at this time of year?

B  **7.1** Listen to people talk about New Year 2000. Match the speakers and the places.

Speaker 1	← at a concert
Speaker 2	→ at home
Speaker 3	at work
Speaker 4	in hospital
Speaker 5	on a beach

C Listen again and answer the questions.

Who talks about:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| a) family? 1 | e) the sunrise? |
| b) friends? | f) a party? 1 |
| c) fireworks? 1 | g) money? |
| d) music? | h) hospital? |

GRAMMAR past simple: was/were

2A Underline the correct alternative.

- I am / was at home. There is / was a family party.
- We are / were in Miami.
- We aren't / weren't alone.
- Was / Were the party for me?

B Complete the table with **was**, **wasn't**, **were** or **weren't**.

I	<u>was</u>	at home. in Beijing. tired.
He/She/It	_____	
You/We/They	<u>weren't</u>	

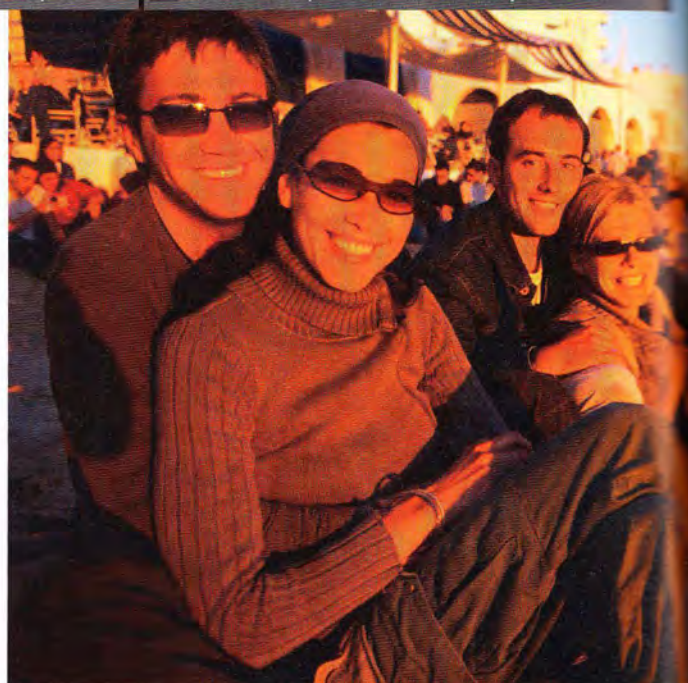
Was _____	he you	here? in class?
Yes,	he we	_____. were.
No,	he we	_____. _____.

3A  **7.2** Listen to the sentences and mark the stress.

- I was at home.
- We were tired.
- She was in class.
- They were here.

B Listen again to the pronunciation of **was** /wəz/ and **were** /wə/. Then listen and repeat.

▶▶▶ page 130 **LANGUAGEBANK**



PRACTICE

4A Underline the correct alternative.

- Where was / were you at New Year 2000? Was / Were you alone or with friends?
- Was / Were you and your friends at a concert last New Year?
- Was / Were there a party on your last birthday? Where was / were it? Was / Were your friends there?
- What was / were the last public holiday in your country? Where was / were you? Who was / were there?

B Complete the answers to questions 1–4 above. Use **was**, **wasn't**, **were** or **weren't**.

- I was on a mountain in Slovakia. I _____ alone – there _____ about twenty of my friends with me.
- No, we _____. We _____ at a party on a boat on the River Thames.
- Yes, there _____, but it _____ a big party because my flat's very small.
- Our last public holiday _____ Thanksgiving. We _____ at my brother's house. My parents _____ there because they _____ on holiday in Jamaica.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions 1–4 from Exercise 4A.

A: Where were you at New Year 2000?

B: I was in Peru.

A: Were you alone?

B: No, I wasn't. I was at a party with people from work. What about you?

speakout TIP

Three questions are very useful to help you to have a good conversation: *What about you? How about you? And you?* Write these questions in your phrase book.



VOCABULARY dates

5A Number the months in order.

September ____ June ____ February ____
 March ____ December ____ October ____
 January 1 July ____ August ____
 May ____ November ____ April ____

B 7.3 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a month.
 Student B: say the next month.

A: May B: June

6A Match the numbers with the words.

1st fifth
 2nd second
 3rd twentieth
 4th fourth
 5th twenty-first
 15th third
 20th first
 21st fifteenth

B 7.4 Listen and number the dates in the order you hear them.

October 15th ____ August 8th ____
 December 1st 1 September 21st ____
 April 16th ____ March 25th ____

C Listen again and repeat the dates.

December **the** first

7A Work in pairs. Write three important dates in your life or in your country. Student A: say the dates. Student B: write the dates down.

B Ask each other about the dates.

B: Why is March the nineteenth important?

A: It's my birthday.

SPEAKING

8A It is Monday at 9a.m. Number the past time phrases in order.

- last Friday ____
- last month ____
- yesterday evening 1
- this time last year 5
- on Saturday afternoon ____

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask about the times in Exercise 8A.

A: Where were you last Friday?

B: I was at home.

WRITING punctuation review

9A Match 1–5 with punctuation marks a)–e).

- comma e)
- full stop b)
- exclamation mark c)
- question mark d)
- capital letter A

B Read the email. Where's Jane? Where's Paola?

Date 28/7/2012

Hi paola ¹ ____
 How are you ² ____ I'm fine and I'm in *****
 with matt ³ ____ We're on holiday here ⁴ ____
 Yesterday we were at the opening of the olympic
 games ⁵ ____ Was it on television
 in italy ⁶ ____ It was great ⁷ ____ There was
 dancing ⁸ ____ singing and fantastic fireworks ⁹ ____
 Here's a photo ¹⁰ ____ Write soon ¹¹ ____
 Best wishes ¹² ____
 jane

C Complete the email with punctuation marks and change six letters to capital letters.

10A Write an email from a special place and on a special day. Write three things about the place but don't write the name of the place.

B Work in groups and read other students' emails. Guess the place.

7.2 RECORD BREAKERS

▶ **GRAMMAR** | past simple: regular verbs

▶ **VOCABULARY** | actions

▶ **HOW TO** | talk about the past

VOCABULARY actions

1A ▶ 7.5 Listen and write the number next to the action you hear.

laugh ____	arrive ____
start <u>1</u>	dance ____
walk ____	cry ____
play tennis ____	talk ____
move home ____	wait ____

B Work in pairs. Student A: act one of the verbs. Student B: say the verb.

READING

2A Look at the photos. Which actions from Exercise 1A can you see? Where are the people?

B Read the article and write the headlines in the correct place.

Man talks for six days

Dance marathon

Non-stop tennis match

Woman walks round world

C Read the article again and write the names.

- 1 He laughed. *Mike Ritof*
- 2 She moved twenty-four times.
- 3 He played tennis with Daniel.
- 4 People listened to him.
- 5 She cried.

D Read the article again and correct the mistakes in the notes below.

dancing: 5,512 hours and 44 minutes

walking: 32,000 metres

talking: 212 hours

playing tennis: 32 hours, 12 minutes, 6 seconds



1 _____

Ffiona Campbell walked around the world – that's 32,000 kilometres in eleven years. In Africa, she started in Cape Town in 1991 and arrived in Tangiers in 1993. Why did she walk so much? Well, maybe it was because of her childhood: she moved home twenty-four times before she was sixteen!



2 _____

Mike Ritof and Edith Boudreaux started dancing at the Merry Garden Ballroom, Chicago on August 29th 1930, and danced for 5,152 hours and 48 minutes (with short breaks). When they finally stopped on April 1st 1931, she cried and he laughed.



3 _____

Carlo Santelli and Daniel Burns played tennis for 38 hours, two minutes and nine seconds on May 10th 2010 in Clifton, New Jersey, USA. We didn't ask them about the winner – they were so happy about getting the world record!



4 _____
Errol Muzawazi of Zimbabwe talked about democracy for 121 hours from December 9th to 14th 2009. One audience member said, 'I listened for thirteen hours and waited for him to stop, but he didn't!'

GRAMMAR past simple: regular verbs

3A Read the article again and find the past form of the verbs below.

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------|-----------|
| 1 start <i>started</i> | 5 laugh | 9 talk |
| 2 dance | 6 walk | 10 listen |
| 3 move | 7 arrive | 11 wait |
| 4 cry | 8 stop | 12 play |

B Complete the table.

Rule: to make the past simple with regular verbs:

	spelling	examples
most verbs	add _____	<i>started, laughed</i>
verbs ending in -e	add _____	_____
verbs ending in consonant + -y	change to _____	_____
most verbs ending in consonant + vowel + consonant	double the final letter, then add _____	_____

C Look at the sentence and complete the rule.

We didn't ask them about the winner ...

Rule:

Use _____ + verb to make the negative of the past simple.

4A **7.6** Listen to the pronunciation of the verbs and write them in the correct place.

/t/ *danced*

/d/ *moved*

/ɪd/ *started*

B **7.7** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

page 130 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

5A Complete the sentences with the past form of the verbs in brackets.

- He _____ (live) here when he was a boy, **but** then he _____ (move) to the countryside.
- We _____ (wait) for hours, **but** the bus _____ (not arrive).
- My friend _____ (cook) dinner last night **and** I really _____ (like) it.
- I usually drive, but yesterday I _____ (walk) **because** they _____ (close) the road.
- The teacher _____ (ask) me a question, **but** I _____ (not understand).
- I _____ (watch) a very sad film last night **and** I _____ (cry) the whole time.

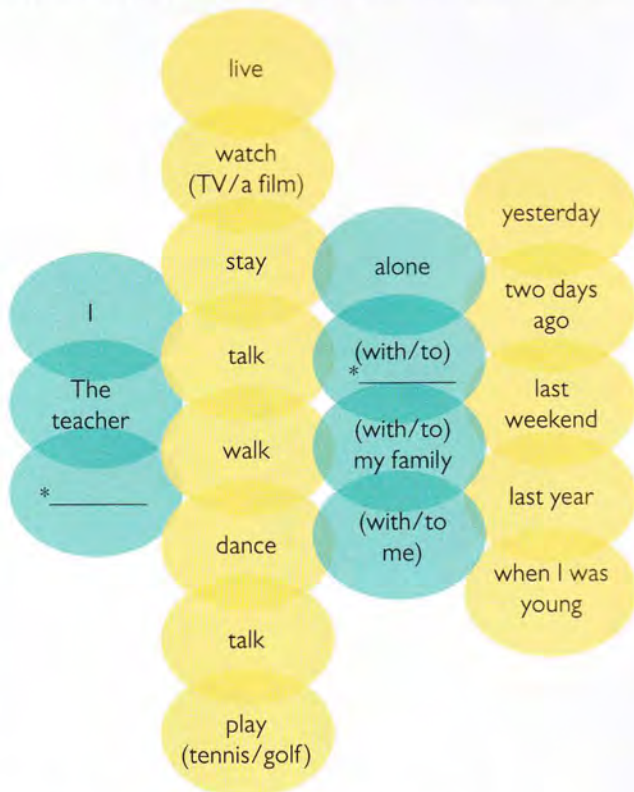
B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: close your book. Student B: read the first part of the sentences. Stop after the word in bold. Student A: try to remember the end of the sentence.

B: He lived here when he was a boy, **but** ...

A: ... then he moved to the countryside.

SPEAKING

6A Make three true sentences and three false sentences.



* Write the name of a friend or student here.

B Work in groups and take turns. Student A: read one of your sentences. Other students: say if it's true or false.

A: Simon danced with Lena last weekend.

B: False.

A: That's right. He didn't dance with Lena. He danced with Bea.

7.3 HOW WAS IT?

► **FUNCTION** | giving opinions

► **VOCABULARY** | adjectives

► **LEARN TO** | show feelings

VOCABULARY adjectives

1A Work in pairs. Complete the table with the adjectives in the box.

all right terrible delicious OK
awful great fantastic not very good
boring interesting

+	delicious
-	terrible
+/-	all right

B Work in pairs and write:

- ++ next to three adjectives that mean very good.
- next to two adjectives that mean very bad.
- F next to an adjective that is only for food.

C ► 7.8 Listen and underline the stress in the adjectives. Then listen and repeat.
all right

2A Write the name of a person, place or thing for each adjective in Exercise 1A.

fantastic – Daniel Craig

boring – golf

all right – my town

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student

A: say a person, place or thing on your list.

Student B: guess Student A's adjective.

A: Golf.

B: Great?

A: No.

B: Boring?

A: Yes!

► page 145 **PHOTOBANK**



FUNCTION giving opinions

3A ► 7.9 Listen to four conversations. Are the conversations about a concert (C), a film (F), a party (P) or a restaurant meal (R)? Write the letter.

1 F 2 3 4

B Listen again. Match phrases 1–8 with a)–h).

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 This is good. | a) steak |
| 2 It was very good. | b) chicken |
| 3 It's terrible. | c) singer |
| 4 It was boring | d) ice cream |
| 5 It wasn't very good. | e) Warren's party |
| 6 She was great. | f) concert |
| 7 Fantastic. | g) film |
| 8 Delicious. | h) Alan's party |

4A ► 7.10 Put the words in order to make questions and opinions. Then listen and check.

1 A: was / your / How / steak?

B: Delicious, / right / just

2 A: your / was / chicken / How?

B: good / It / very / wasn't

3 A: How / concert / the / was?

B: fantastic / band / was / The

4 A: party / was / the / How?

B: boring / It / was

B Underline two stressed words in each question or phrase above.

C Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

D Work in pairs and practise the conversations.

► page 130 **LANGUAGEBANK**



LEARN TO show feelings

5A ▶ 7.10 Listen to the phrases again. Is speaker B's voice high (H) or low (L)?

1 ____ 2 ____ 3 ____ 4 ____

Speakout TIP

When you give an opinion, use high intonation for a

positive feeling (*Beautiful!*), and flat or low intonation for a

negative feeling (*Terrible!*)

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions using the words in the circles. Use high or low intonation in your answers.

the film?
the concert?
the party?
your holiday?
the food?
your weekend?

great
fantastic
delicious
not very good
terrible
awful
very nice
boring

A: How was your holiday?

B: It wasn't very good.

SPEAKING

6A Complete the conversation.

Student A

Student B

Where / you / last night?

I / Kelly's party.

How / it?

It / not very good.
I / not like / it.

Why not?

The people / boring /
the music / awful.
Where / you?

I / cinema.

Which film / it?

(name of film)

How / it?

It / great! I / really /
like / it.

Who / in it?

(name of actor or actress).
He/She / very good.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Role-play the conversation.

C Change the conversation to talk about a restaurant and a concert.

A: Where were you last night?

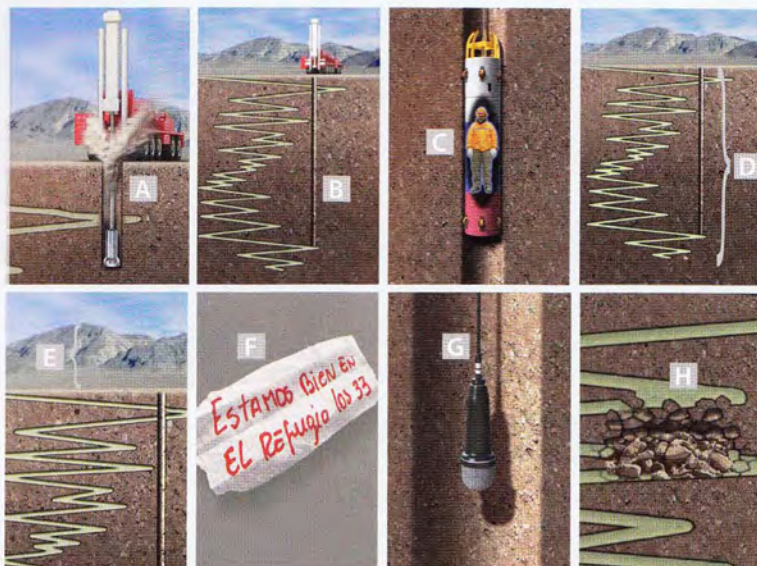
B: I was at the new Chinese restaurant.

A: Oh, how was it?

DVD PREVIEW

1A Work in pairs and match the words in the box with pictures A–H.

drill	A	miner	tunnel	microphone	note
underground		surface		accident	



B What do you know about the Chilean miners' story? Work in pairs and underline the correct alternative.

- 1 It was in 2008/2009/2010.
- 2 There was an accident/a lot of rain/a plane crash at the mine.
- 3 There were 23/33/43 miners underground.
- 4 For the first 3/7/17 days, many people were sure the men were dead.
- 5 Then a note/a text message/an email arrived from the men. They were OK!
- 6 Workers drilled a tunnel to the miners for 7 days/weeks/months.
- 7 The first miner arrived at the surface in the morning/in the afternoon/at night.
- 8 The last man out was the president/chef/boss.

C Read the programme information. Which sentences in Exercise 1B does it give information about? Were your answers correct?

BBC The Chilean Miners' Rescue

In 2010 there was an accident at a mine near Copiapó, Chile. 33 miners were underground at the time. Were they dead or alive? For 17 days, their families and friends waited. Then, on Day 17, a note arrived from the mine: it was from the men. They were OK. Workers drilled down to the miners for many weeks. People around the world watched and waited. Finally, after 69 days, one by one, the miners travelled to the surface. They were free! Watch their story on tonight's *Newsround*.

DVD VIEW

2A Watch the DVD to check your answers to the other sentences in Exercise 1B.

B Complete sentences 1–6 with words from the box below.

seven	days	worked	families
well	travelled	minutes	rescue

- 1 Thirty-three miners were underground, seven hundred metres underground.
- 2 'We are _____ in the shelter, the 33'.
- 3 The miners _____ to keep healthy and positive.
- 4 The miners' _____ watched and waited.
- 5 The tunnel was finished. The _____ started.
- 6 It was eighteen _____ from the mine to the surface.
- 7 One by one the miners _____ to the surface.
- 8 After sixty-nine _____, the miners were free.

C Watch the DVD again to check your answers.



speakout a history quiz

3A Work in pairs. Put the news events on the timeline.

- a) Michael Jackson died
- b) Asian tsunami
- c) Google started
- d) Chernobyl nuclear accident



B 7.11 Listen to two people do the task and check your answers.

C Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

Which was first?

I think (Chernobyl / the Asian tsunami) was (first / next).

Yes, I agree.

I don't know./I'm not sure.

No, (Google) was before (the Asian tsunami).

No, (it) was after (the Asian tsunami).

Which date?

It was before my time.

I remember it well.

Let's check the answers.

We were (right/wrong) about (three answers/ Google.)

D Work in groups. Look at page 151 and do the quiz. Use the key phrases to help.

writeback a history quiz

4A Read and answer three questions from a quiz.

1 When were the first modern Olympic Games?

- a) 776
- b) 1896
- c) 1906

2 Which US president's father was also president?

- a) John Kennedy
- b) George W. Bush
- c) Barack Obama

3 Why was Evita famous?

- a) she was a politician
- b) she was a singer
- c) she was a sportswoman

See answers at the bottom of the page.

B Work in pairs and write three more questions. Use the prompts to help.

When ... ?

Where ... ?

Who ... ?

Which (king, queen, president, country, etc.) ... ?

What ... ?

Why ... ?

C Work with a new partner and take turns. Ask and answer your questions.



Answers: 1b), 2b), 3a)

PAST SIMPLE: WAS/WERE

1A Write the questions for 1–8.

Find someone who ...

- 1 was very happy yesterday.
Were you very happy yesterday?
- 2 was tired this morning.
- 3 was in the town/city centre at the weekend.
- 4 was here in the last class.
- 5 was in a café before class.
- 6 was on a train at eight o'clock this morning.
- 7 was late for something yesterday.
- 8 was ill yesterday.

B Work in groups and ask the questions. If a student says *yes*, write his/her name.

A: Were you very happy yesterday?

B: Yes, I was. It was my birthday.

DATES

2A Write today's date. _____

B Write the dates for the time phrases below.

- 1 yesterday _____
- 2 last year _____
- 3 last month _____
- 4 last Saturday _____
- 5 on Tuesday _____
- 6 last night _____

C Work in pairs. Student A: say a time phrase from Exercise 2B. Student B: say the date.

D Write a different date and repeat Exercise 2C.

Friday June 3rd 2011

A: Yesterday.

B: Thursday June 2nd 2011.

A: Last year.

B: 2010.

ACTIONS

3A Put the letters in the correct order to make actions.

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 1 twia wait | 5 gluha |
| 2 ktla | 6 ryc |
| 3 nacde | 7 ratts |
| 4 veriar | 8 klaw |

B Complete the sentences with one of the verbs above.

- 1 People say that I *laugh* and smile a lot.
- 2 I never _____ late for the lesson.
- 3 My day _____ at six o'clock in the morning.
- 4 The teacher sometimes _____ too fast.
- 5 Sometimes I _____ to work, sometimes I drive.
- 6 At a party, I _____ if the music is good.
- 7 I don't _____ when I'm sad.
- 8 I never _____ when someone is late for a meeting.

C Work in pairs. Which of the sentences in Exercise 3B are true for you? Change the other sentences to make them true.

PAST SIMPLE: REGULAR VERBS

4A Change the verbs to the past form.

- 1 watched a film on a plane
- 2 wait_____ for a bus
- 3 phone_____ someone in your family
- 4 ask_____ a question on the internet
- 5 laugh_____ a lot
- 6 play_____ with a child
- 7 cry_____ at a film
- 8 study_____ English grammar
- 9 stop_____ someone on the street
- 10 dance_____ at a club

B Work in pairs and take turns.

Ask and answer questions with the phrases above. Start your question: *When was the last time you ... ?*

A: When was the last time you watched a film on a plane?

B: Last year. I was on a plane from Madrid to Berlin. The film was ...

ADJECTIVES

5A Add the vowels to the adjectives.

- 1 t__rr__bl__
- 2 d__l__c__s
- 3 __nt__r__st__ng
- 4 __wf__l
- 5 f__nt__st__c
- 6 b__r__ng
- 7 gr__t
- 8 __ll__r__ght
- 9 n__t__v__ry__g__d
- 10 __K

B Work in pairs and make short conversations. Use the adjectives above and words in the box.

the film the food the match
the concert the lesson

A: The concert was terrible!

B: Yes, it was awful.

GIVING OPINIONS

6A Put the sentences in order to make a conversation.

A: Why not?

A: It was great.

A: How was the restaurant? 1

A: She thinks it was all right.

B: How was it for Anne?

B: It wasn't very good. 2

B: Because the food was terrible. And the film?

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about their birthdays on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

UNIT 8

UNIT

8

SPEAKING

- › Talk about first meetings
- › Ask and answer about a good holiday
- › Give directions in a supermarket
- › Tell a bad holiday story

LISTENING

- › Listen to a radio programme about holidays
- › Watch a BBC comedy about tourists in Spain

READING

- › Read about how people met their friends

WRITING

- › Use linkers: *so* and *because*
- › Write a bad holiday story

BBC content

- ▶ Video podcast: Where did you go on holiday last year?
- ▶ DVD: Little Britain

places



▶ Nice place to meet p84



▶ Good and bad p86



▶ Where's the fruit? p88



▶ Guided Tour p90



READING

1A Work in pairs. Where do people usually meet friends for the first time?

B Read the text. Which story is really unusual?

C Underline the mistake in each sentence. Try to remember the correct information from the text.

- 1 The bridge was in Northern Scotland.
- 2 Cynthia and Anne were on the bridge for an hour.
- 3 The taxi driver worked in London.
- 4 Darnell worked at a shop.
- 5 Jon was in a train accident.
- 6 Jon was in hospital for a month.
- 7 Someone took Alison's passport.
- 8 The waitress said, 'Do you need money?'

D Read the text again and check your answers.

GRAMMAR past simple: irregular verbs

2A Write the past forms of the verbs. Use the text in Exercise 1B to help. Check the meaning of any new words.

- | | | | |
|----------|------------|---------|-------|
| 1 meet | <u>met</u> | 6 break | _____ |
| 2 come | _____ | 7 go | _____ |
| 3 take | _____ | 8 have | _____ |
| 4 think | _____ | 9 sit | _____ |
| 5 become | _____ | 10 say | _____ |

B **8.1** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

C Underline the correct alternative to make the negative. Use the text to help.

I didn't have / didn't had any money.

speakout TIP

When you learn a new verb, check your dictionary and write the past form in your phrase book, e.g. *go* – *went*. For regular verbs, write 'reg', e.g. *play* (reg). Do this with these verbs: *drive, know, stay, see, give*.

Unusual Stories

Win a holiday for two. Tell us where you met your best friend.



On a rope bridge in Northern Ireland! I walked from one side, and another woman, Anne, walked from the other side. We met in the centre, and we were both very scared. We were there for half an hour. Finally, a guide came and helped us. After that half-hour together we were friends for life. **Cynthia**



In my taxi in New York City. I was a taxi driver in New York in the 1990s and I worked at night. Darnell worked at a club, and I took him home at 4a.m. every night. I thought he was a really nice person. We talked a lot and became great friends. **Oliver**



In hospital in China. I was in a car accident and broke my leg. I went to hospital and was there for a week. There was a Chinese guy in my room, Li. We had a lot of time to talk and became great friends. **Jon**



In a café in Argentina. I was on holiday and someone took my money. I sat down in a café. I didn't have any money but I was very hungry. The waitress came to my table and said, 'Hi, I'm Claudia. Do you need help?' We were instant best friends! **Alison**

PRACTICE

3A Read the stories. Who are the people?

1

In the 1990s, I ¹ was (be) a singer at a club in New York. The first night there I ² _____ (finish) work at 4a.m. and I ³ _____ (not want) to walk home so I ⁴ _____ (stop) Oliver's taxi and he ⁵ _____ (drive) me home. I ⁶ _____ (think) he was a great guy and later we ⁷ _____ (become) good friends.

2

In 2008, I ⁸ _____ (work) as a waitress at a café. One day I was at work and I ⁹ _____ (see) a woman alone and very unhappy. I ¹⁰ _____ (go) over to her and ¹¹ _____ (say), 'Hi, do you need help?' She ¹² _____ (not have) any money and she ¹³ _____ (not know) anyone in the city. I ¹⁴ _____ (give) her some money and food. Now she's one of my best friends.

B Complete the stories with the past forms of the verbs in brackets.

C Work in pairs. Student A: change three things in story 1. Student B: change three things in story 2.

D Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read your story. Student B: listen to Student A and stop the story when you hear something different.

A: I was a singer at a club in London.

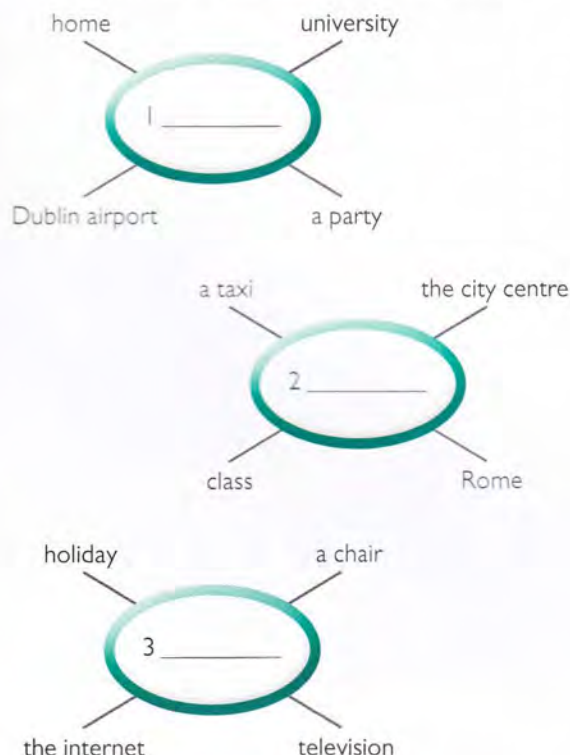
B: Stop! No, you were a singer at a club in New York.

VOCABULARY prepositions of place

4A Underline the correct alternative.

- We were at / in / on a bridge.
- We met at / in / on New York.
- I was at / in / on work.

B Complete the word webs with *in*, *on* or *at*.



5A Complete the sentences with *in*, *on* or *at*.

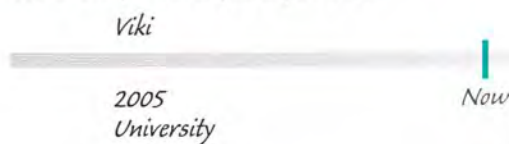
- I met my best friend ^{at} university.
- I met one of my friends the internet.
- I went holiday with a friend last year.
- I met a great friend my English class last month.
- I was a friend's party on Saturday.
- I had lunch with a friend the city centre yesterday.

B Tick the sentences that are true for you. Change the other sentences to make them true for you.

page 146 **PHOTOBANK**

SPEAKING

6A Write the name of three friends on the timeline. Write the year and place you met.



B Work in groups and take turns. Show your timeline and talk about your friends.

Viki is a good friend. We met in 2005 at university. We were students.

8.2 GOOD AND BAD



VOCABULARY holiday activities

1A Match verbs 1–4 with a)–d) and verbs 5–8 with e)–h).

- | | |
|---------|---------------------|
| 1 see | a) the local water |
| 2 eat | b) ill |
| 3 drink | c) old buildings |
| 4 be | d) the local food |
| 5 go | e) English |
| 6 meet | f) a good time |
| 7 speak | g) camping |
| 8 have | h) the local people |

B Work in pairs. Which activities above are in the pictures?

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say the ending. Student B: say the activity.

- A: old buildings
B: see old buildings

D Work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer. Which activities do you do when you're on holiday?

- A: On holiday, do you drink the local water?
B: Yes, I do, but I sometimes drink mineral water. How about you?

LISTENING

2A Work alone. Number the holidays in order (1–5). 1 = My favourite type of holiday, 5 = I don't like this type of holiday.

- a) a camping holiday with your family ____
b) a holiday in Sydney, Australia ____
c) a weekend in Paris, France ____
d) two months in China alone ____
e) a walking holiday in Peru with a friend ____

B Work in pairs and compare your answers.

- A: For number one, I put a weekend in Paris.
B: Why?
A: I like France and Paris is beautiful. What about you?

3A 8.2 Listen to a radio programme about good and bad holidays. Write good (G) or bad (B) next to the holidays in Exercise 2A.

B Underline the correct information. Then listen again and check your ideas.

- 1 He went camping in Canada/Cambodia.
2 They didn't have tea/television.
3 He lost his passport/girlfriend.
4 He had some bad food/water.
5 She got/didn't get to Paris.
6 She ate lunch/dinner on the train.
7 She met English/Chinese people.
8 She spoke/didn't speak Chinese.

GRAMMAR past simple: questions**4A** 8.3 Listen and complete the table.

Questions and short answers					
	—	you	like	it?	Yes, I ____.
			speak	English?	No, ____.
Wh- questions					
Where		you	go?		
What	—	you	do?		

B Listen to the questions and short answers. Then listen and repeat.

Did you ...?

page 132 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

5A Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- on / go / you / holiday / last / Did / summer?
- have / weather / on / good / you / Did / holiday?
- eat / a / restaurant / you / in / Did / yesterday?
- you / your / last / friends / night / Did / meet?
- English / you / yesterday / speak / Did?
- breakfast / this / have / Did / morning / you?

B Complete the answers.

- (+ I / to Greece) Yes, I did. I went to Greece.
- (+ we / it / very hot)
- (- I / at home)
- (- I / last weekend)
- (+ I / with my teacher)
- (+ we / toast and coffee)

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask the questions in Exercise 5A and answer about you.

A: Did you go on holiday last summer?

B: Yes, I did. I went to Bulgaria, to the Black Sea.

page 146 **PHOTOBANK**

SPEAKING

6A Work alone. Write notes to answer the questions about a good holiday.

- Where and when did you go?
 - Did you go alone or with friends or family?
 - How did you travel?
 - Where did you stay?
 - Did you have good weather?
 - What did you do?
 - Why did you like it?
- 1 Colombia – in 2010 – four weeks

B Work in groups and take turns. Student A: talk about your holiday. Other students: ask questions.

книга выложена группой vk.com/englishlibrary

WRITING so and because**7A** Match sentences 1–3 with a)–c).**Holiday mistakes**

- In Denmark, we went camping because the hotels were expensive.
- In Hong Kong, I thought the city was dangerous so I didn't go out at night.
- In Barcelona, we were hungry at 6p.m. so we looked for a restaurant.

- Big mistake – we went out on the last night and it was great!
- Big mistake – they only open at 9p.m.!
- Big mistake – it was cold at night!

B Underline *so* and *because* in sentences 1–3 above. Which word answers the question *why*?

C Underline the correct alternative.

- We walked *so/because* there were no buses.
- There were no buses *so/because* we walked.

8A Add *so* or *because* to the sentences.

- Our plane was at eleven we got to the airport at quarter past ten.
- I didn't book a hotel I didn't have time.
- We went to New Zealand in July we have school holidays in the summer.
- We didn't find any mineral water we drank the local water.

B Work in pairs. What was the 'big mistake' in situations 1–4 above? Write your ideas.

- Big mistake – the check-in closed at ten so we ...



8.3 WHERE'S THE FRUIT?

► **FUNCTION** | giving directions

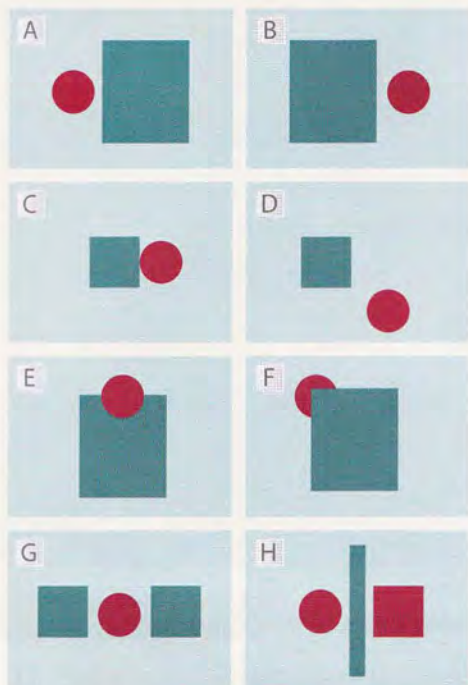
► **VOCABULARY** | prepositions

► **LEARN TO** | use examples

VOCABULARY prepositions

1A Match the prepositions in the box with pictures A–H.

on the right of *B* on the left of
in front of near behind between
next to opposite



B Work in pairs and take turns. Choose a picture and ask about it.

A: Where's the ball in picture G?

B: It's between the boxes.

2A Tick the sentences that are true for your class.

- There are windows next to the door.
- The teacher usually stands behind a table.
- I sit opposite another student.
- There's a noticeboard on the right of the door.
- Our coats and jackets are near the window.
- My bag is between my table and another table.

B Change the other sentences to make them true for your class.



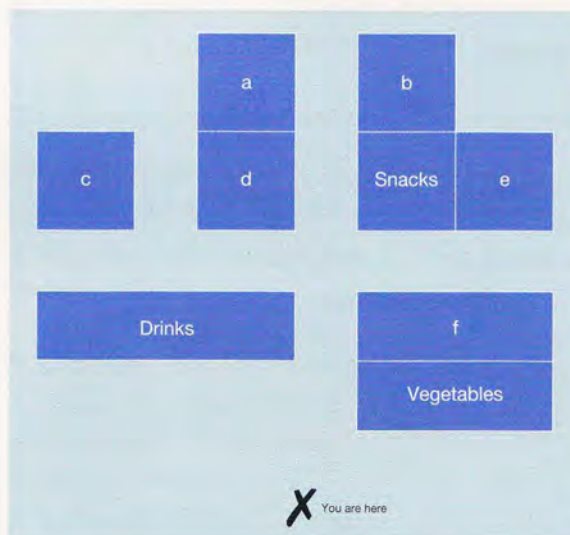
FUNCTION giving directions

3A 8.4 Listen to three conversations. What does the person want to find? Write the number of the conversation next to the food.

vegetables ____ bread ____ fish ____ fruit 1 cereal ____ cakes ____
snacks ____ meat ____

B Listen again. Match places a)–f) with the food. Do not use two of the places.

fruit f bread ____ cereal ____ cakes ____



4A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

Excuse behind where see Let over of Do

- A: ¹ Excuse me, ² _____'s the fruit?
 B: ³ _____ you ⁴ _____ the vegetables ⁵ _____ there?
 A: Yes.
 B: The vegetables are in front ⁶ _____ the fruit. Over there.
 A: ⁷ _____ me check. The fruit's ⁸ _____ the vegetables.
 B: Yes, that's right.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

▶ page 132 **LANGUAGEBANK**

LEARN TO use examples

5A ▶ 8.5 Listen and complete the conversations.

- 1 A: Vegetables? ¹ _____ are they?
 B: Vegetables ... you ² _____, tomatoes, potatoes, carrots.
 A: Oh, vegetables.
 2 B: Do you see the snacks?
 A: Snacks? I don't know 'snacks'.
 B: Snacks, for ³ _____, chocolate, nuts and crisps.
 A: Oh, I understand.
 3 A: Cereal? What's ⁴ _____?
 B: Cereal. ⁵ _____ Corn Flakes.

speakout TIP

When you don't know a word, examples can help. Use the phrases *you know*, *like* and *for example* to give examples.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversations.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: choose one type of food below and ask Student B about it. Student B: ask for an example.

meat

fruit

vegetables

dairy

- A: Where's the meat?
 B: Meat? For example?
 A: You know, chicken, beef, lamb.
 B: Oh, meat!



SPEAKING

6A Write the six types of food in your supermarket diagram.

meat

fish

dairy

sweets

bread

fruit

Your supermarket

	Vegetables		Snacks
Cereal		Drinks	

X
You are here

Your partner's supermarket

	Vegetables		Snacks
Cereal		Drinks	

X
You are here

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer about the food in your partner's supermarket. Write the food in the correct place.

- A: Excuse me, where's the meat?
 B: It's in front of the ...

DVD PREVIEW

1A Complete the holiday questionnaire. Tick the sentences that are true for you.

On holiday, I always:

read about the place. ☐

take bus tours. ☐

take a lot of photos. ☐

go out in the evenings. ☐

relax and do nothing. ☐

B Work in pairs and compare your answers.

2 Read the programme information. Are sentences 1–4 true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 *Little Britain* is funny.
- 2 A woman plays the tour guide Carol.
- 3 Carol is friendly.
- 4 This episode is in Spain.

BBC Little Britain Abroad

The BBC comedy show, *Little Britain*, is about British people in typical situations. Carol Beer (the actor, David Walliams) is often on the show. Carol is always bored and is usually rude to people. In this episode, she is a tour guide for a group of British tourists on holiday in Majorca, Spain.

DVD VIEW

3A Work in pairs and look at the photos. Which woman is Carol?



B Watch the DVD to check your answer.

C Watch the DVD again and number the phrases in the order you hear them.

- a) questions or problems —
- b) look to your right —
- c) stop the coach —
- d) Sunsearchers Holidays 1
- e) Welcome to Spain —
- f) fun, fun, fun —
- g) get out —

D Discuss in pairs. What do you think the man and woman do next?

speake**out** a bad holiday story

4A Work in pairs and look at the pictures. Why did the man have a bad holiday? Use the words/phrases in the box below.

bored it rained noisy expensive missed the plane



B **8.6** Listen to the man tell the story. Which picture is different from his story?

C Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

- I missed my (plane/train/bus).
- I arrived (in Honolulu) one (hour/day/week) late.
- I lost my (passport/money/bags).
- It rained for (the first three days/all week).
- I stayed in (my hotel room/the café) (all day).
- The hotel was (noisy/expensive/dirty).
- The food was (bad/expensive).
- I was very happy to go home.

5A Work in pairs and change three things about the story. Use the key phrases and practise telling your story to each other.

B Work with a new partner. Take turns to tell your stories. How many differences can you find?

writ**eback** a holiday story

6A Read the story and underline six positive things.

.....
Last year we went to Edinburgh on holiday, and I didn't have a good time.

We took a boat from Dublin to Holyhead in Wales, and then a train to Edinburgh. In Holyhead, we were hungry, so we went to a restaurant in the station. The food was great and the waiter was very nice, but we were there for too long and we missed our train. There were no other trains that day, so we stayed in the station.

The next day, we arrived in Edinburgh. We were very tired but the weather was good and the place was beautiful. We were happy - for one hour! Our hotel was lovely and the people were friendly, but then I became ill and I was in bed for five days. We were there for one week. It was a very long week.
.....

B Write your own bad holiday story. Use 70–100 words.

C Read other students' stories. Which one was really bad?



PAST SIMPLE: IRREGULAR VERBS

1A Complete the sentences about the past.

- I / meet / a friend in a café yesterday.
I met a friend in a café yesterday.
- Two students / come / to class late for this lesson.
- I / think / English was difficult, but it's easy.
- I / go / home by train last night.
- I / not sit / here last lesson.
- I / not have / breakfast at home.
- I / see / the teacher in a supermarket yesterday.

B Change the sentences so they are true for you.

C Work in pairs. Student A: read your sentences. Student B: listen and say **your** sentence.

A: I met a friend in a restaurant yesterday.

B: I didn't meet a friend yesterday.

PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE

2A Work in pairs. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

class home car work
street bike Bangkok holiday

- In the morning I have two coffees. I have my first coffee at _____ and then my second coffee at _____.
- I always listen to music in my _____, but not on my _____, because it's too dangerous.
- I was on _____ in _____ last year.
- I like speaking English with the teacher in _____, but I don't like speaking with people in the _____.

B Work alone. Write four sentences about you. Start with the words in bold in Exercise 2A and use *in*, *on* or *at*.

In the morning I have tea at home but I drink water at work.

C Work in pairs and compare your sentences.

HOLIDAY ACTIVITIES

3A Add vowels to complete the activities.

- I go camping
- speek english
- see id buldings
- drink the lice water
- met the lice from
- bull
- have good time
- met the lice perple

B Work in pairs. Which activities above do you do:

- on a family holiday in your country with not a lot of money?
- on a weekend city break?
- in a different country?

PAST SIMPLE: QUESTIONS

4A Find and correct the mistakes in the questions about last weekend. One question is correct.

- Did you had a good weekend?
Did you have a good weekend?
- What did you?
- Met you any friends?
- Where did you went?
- a) Did you buy anything?
b) What you buy?
- a) You did see a film at the cinema or on TV?
b) What were it?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

PREPOSITIONS

5A Put the letters in bold in the correct order to make prepositions.

- The tree is on the **thirg** of the shop.
- The tree is **etenweb** the shop and the car.
- The road is **txne** to the house.
- The car is on the **flet** of the shop.
- The man is **hibden** the house.
- The woman is in **tornf** of the shop.

B Look at sentences 1–6 in Exercise 5A and find three mistakes in the picture.



GIVING DIRECTIONS

6A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

are next the no of near
there left

- A: Excuse me, where ^{are} the vegetables?
B: Do you see the fruit over?
A: Where?
B: Over there, the magazines.
A: Yes, I see it.
B: Well, the vegetables are to the fruit. On the left.
A: Let me check that. They're on the left the fruit.
B: Right.
A: On right?
B: No, you were right. On the.
A: I see. Thank you.
B: problem.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about their last holiday on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout



READING AND GRAMMAR

1A Read the article. What happened to Jim Black?

Businessman, 35, dies in hotel

This morning, Rose Green, a cleaner at the Adolphi Hotel, Edinburgh, found millionaire businessman Jim Black dead behind the hotel. Police think he died between 10 o'clock and midnight last night. Mr Black and his wife, Carla, were at the hotel with Black's business partner, Mike Brown.

B Complete the police's questions to Mike Brown.

- 1 be / you / Jim / friends?
Were you and Jim friends?
- 2 you / see / Jim / yesterday afternoon?
- 3 you / have / dinner / Jim and Carla?
- 4 What time / you / go / your room?
- 5 Where / be / you / between ten o'clock and midnight?

C Read Mike's police statement and answer questions 1–5 above.

Witness Statement

Jim Black was a good friend and we were business partners. We sometimes visited places together at weekends – me, Jim and his wife Carla. Carla didn't like me, and she wasn't happy with Jim. I think Carla killed Jim.

Yesterday afternoon I played tennis with Jim for an hour. We started at two o'clock and then at half past three, we went to our rooms in the hotel. I met Jim and Carla at seven o'clock in the restaurant. Jim was very quiet, but Carla talked a lot. I think she was angry with Jim. We ate dinner together and after that I went to my room at ten. I think Jim went out. I didn't go to bed. I wasn't tired and so I listened to the radio. I went to bed at half past eleven.

Mike Brown

Mike Brown

2A Complete Carla's police statement with the past form of the verbs in brackets.

Witness Statement

Jim ¹ was (be) my husband.
Jim and Mike ² _____ (be) in business together, but they ³ _____ (not be) friends. Mike ⁴ _____ (not like) Jim.

Yesterday afternoon they ⁵ _____ (play) tennis. I ⁶ _____ (walk) to the shops and then I ⁷ _____ (go) back to the hotel at half past four and ⁸ _____ (write) some letters. Jim ⁹ _____ (come) back at six. He ¹⁰ _____ (not talk) to me. He was very angry. We ¹¹ _____ (meet) Mike for dinner at seven. Jim was very quiet, so I talked a lot. We ¹² _____ (have) dinner, then Mike went to his room at ten. Jim and I danced from ten to eleven, and then Jim ¹³ _____ (want) a walk. He went out and I went to our room. I ¹⁴ _____ (be) very tired, so I went to bed. The next morning Jim was dead. I think Mike killed my husband.

Carla Black

Carla Black

B Underline two differences between Carla's and Mike's statements.

C Work in pairs and check your answers.

LISTENING AND GRAMMAR

3A **R4.1** Listen to five people at the Adolphi Hotel and complete the times in the table.

Name	Information	Time
1 Receptionist	a) Mr Black and Mr Brown went out. b) They went back to their hotel rooms.	<u>1.45</u> _____
2 Waiter	Two men and a woman left the restaurant.	_____
3 Hotel guest	The radio was on in the Blacks' room.	_____
4 Night receptionist	a) Mr Black went out. b) Another man went out.	_____ _____
5 Hotel guest	I came back to the hotel.	_____

B Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- Mr Black came back to the hotel alone. *F*
- A man and a woman danced for half an hour in the restaurant.
- Two people went out of the hotel at 10.15p.m.
- The other person was Mr Brown.
- The other person was a woman.

C Work in pairs. Who do you think killed Jim Black?

SPEAKING

4A Work in groups. Students A and B: turn to page 150. Other students: you are the police. Read the information and put the words in 1-4 in the correct order to make questions.

On Monday at half past one in the afternoon there was a robbery at a clothes shop. Police think it was two students from your class. The students say they were at a restaurant.

- restaurant / arrive / What / at / you / the / did / time?
- name / was / the / restaurant's / What?
- you / did / eat / What?
- cost / much / it / How / did?

B Write two more questions for Students A and B.

C Ask your questions to Student A. Then ask the questions to Student B. Check their answers are the same.

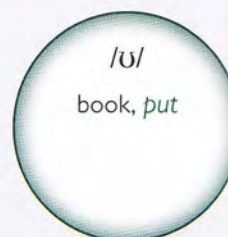
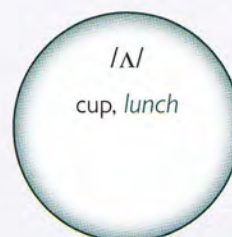
SOUNDS: /ʌ/ AND /ʊ/

5A **R4.2** Listen to the sounds and the words. Then listen and repeat.

/ʌ/	/ʊ/
cup	book

B **R4.3** Listen and put the words in the box in the correct group. Then listen and repeat.

lunch put good month country
cook hungry look colour full



6A Work in pairs. Complete the words and circle the sound in each word.

	/ʌ/
four family words	m <u>o</u> ther b_____ h_____ s_____
a type of transport in a city	b_____
a big country	R_____
two days of the week	S_____ M_____
a number	o_____

	/ʊ/
a sport	f_____
you read it and like it	a g_____ b_____
two signs on a door	p_____ p_____
a month	J_____
a food	s_____

B Work with another pair and compare.

UNIT 9

UNIT

9

SPEAKING

- › Find the right gift
- › Talk about how you spend money
- › Ask people to do things
- › Describe a favourite possession

LISTENING

- › Listen to a radio programme about shopping mistakes
- › Listen to someone shopping
- › Watch a BBC programme about the iPod

READING

- › Read a website forum about gift-giving around the world

WRITING

- › Write photos captions
- › Write about a favourite possession

BBC content

- ▶ Video podcast: Do you like shopping?
- ▶ DVD: Days That Shook The World

shopping



▶ The right gift

p96



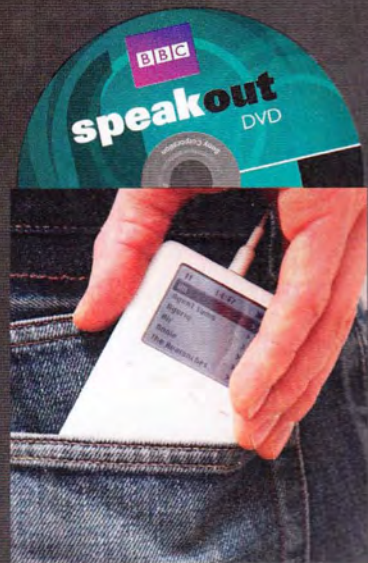
▶ A waste of money

p98



▶ What would you like?

p100



▶ Days That Shook The World

p102

What's the right gift in your country?

A visitor to your country wants to give a gift. What's the right gift in your country?
We asked you to give us your ideas.



Gifts are very important in Japan. We always wrap gifts but we don't like using white paper because it's unlucky. Never give four gifts. The word 'four' in Japanese is 'shi' and means death. People like pens – they are easy to carry and they mean 'learning'. **Hitomi, Japan**

When people give gifts, we often say 'no' at first. We never open a gift in front of the giver. We wait and open it later. We always use two hands to give a present. **Khun, Thailand**

In Mexico, people like gifts, especially gifts from a different country. People like giving flowers but we don't give red or yellow flowers because red and yellow are unlucky. **Chantico, Mexico**

In the UK, we usually open gifts immediately. British people love getting chocolates or flowers, but red roses are for lovers. Nowadays 'activity' gifts are popular, for example theatre tickets or a dinner for two. **Susan, UK**

READING

1 Work in pairs and discuss. When do you give gifts? Who do you give gifts to?

2A Read the text. Which things are the same as your country?

B Work in pairs and cover the text. Which country/countries are the sentences about?

- Always use two hands. *Thailand*
- Chocolates are good.
- Don't give four gifts.
- It isn't OK to open gifts in front of the person.
- People like flowers.
- Yellow roses are a bad idea.
- Pens are good gifts.
- People often give 'activities'.

C Read the text again and check your ideas.

D Complete the sentences. Then work in pairs and tell your partner.

- In my country, good gifts are ...
- On my last birthday, I got ...
- On my friend's last birthday, I gave him/her ...

page 146 **PHOTOBANK**

GRAMMAR like, love, hate + -ing

3A Look at the sentences. Put the verbs in bold on the line.

We **don't like** using white paper.

People **like** giving flowers.

British people **love** getting chocolates or flowers.

I **hate** buying gifts for people. I always buy boring gifts.

I love	2	3	4
✓✓	✓	X	XX

B Look at the table and underline the correct alternative in rules 1 and 2.

I/You/We	love like	pens. buying gifts.
He/She	doesn't like hates	

Rules:

- Use *love, (not) like, hate* + singular/plural noun.
- Use *love, (not) like, hate* + verb/verb + -ing

C 9.1 Listen to the sentences. Then listen and repeat.

page 134 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

4A Complete the sentences with the *-ing* form of the verbs in the box. Pay attention to the spelling.

eat live get up go read watch wrap have

- I love eating vegetables.
- I hate sport on TV.
- I like two sisters.
- I don't like in bed.
- I like to parties.
- I love in a city.
- I don't like before eight o'clock.
- I hate gifts.

B Tick the sentences that are true for you. Change the ones that are false.

I hate eating vegetables.

C Work in pairs and find two things the same for you and your partner.

VOCABULARY activities

5A Write the *-ing* form of the verbs to make activities.

- 1 running
- 2 relax
- 3 play computer games
- 4 cook
- 5 take photos
- 6 go to the theatre
- 7 swim
- 8 chat online
- 9 camp
- 10 go on long walks

B Which activities above do you usually do:

- outside?
- in special clothes?
- inside?
- with a machine?
- with someone?

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer about the activities. Start with *Do you like ... ?*

A: Do you like running?

B: No, I hate it. I never run.

speakout TIP

Short answers give a lot of information. Look at the different ways to answer the question, *Do you like ... ?* No, not at all. No, not really. It depends. Yes, I do. Yes, sometimes. Yes, a lot. Write them in your phrasebook.

SPEAKING

6A Look at the website. Which of the activities are in the photos?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask questions to complete the information.

	love	like	not like	hate
animals		✓		
dancing				
relaxing				
sweets				
cooking				
being outside				
eating out				
watching plays				
driving fast				
doing exercise				

A: Do you like animals?

B: Yes, I do.

C Work alone and choose the best activity gift from the website for your partner. Then tell your partner the gift.

D Tell the class about your activity gift. Was it right for you? Why/Why not?

Activity-gifts4u.com

Shop now 

Give your friends and family a very special gift. Here are our top ten:

- ▶ hot-air balloon trip
- ▶ theatre evening
- ▶ driving a Formula-1 car
- ▶ salsa lessons
- ▶ sushi-making class
- ▶ chocolate-making class
- ▶ bird-watching tour
- ▶ dinner for two
- ▶ one-to-one tennis class
- ▶ day at a beauty spa



VOCABULARY money

1A Work in pairs and discuss. Do you like shopping? Why/Why not?

B Work in pairs. Look at the verbs in bold and underline the correct alternative.

- You see something in a shop. You want it, but you don't need it. Do you:
 - walk out of the shop?
 - buy/sell** it and then never use it?
- You have a lot of things at home. You don't need everything. Do you:
 - buy/sell** things on the internet?
 - give things to friends?
- How much did you **pay/cost** for your last coffee or tea? Do you think it was:
 - too much?
 - the right price?
- How much does transport **pay/cost** you every week? Is this:
 - too much?
 - OK?
- It's your birthday. You **get/give** an expensive gift, but you hate it. Do you:
 - keep it but never use it?
 - give it to someone else?

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions 1–5.

2A Write the past forms of the verbs. Check in your dictionary.

- buy bought
- sell _____
- pay _____
- cost _____
- give _____
- get _____

B ▶ 9.2 Listen and repeat the verbs.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a verb. Student B: say the past form.

▶ page 147 **PHOTOBANK**



LISTENING

3A Match the words in the box with pictures A–E.

hat lamp tent drums exercise bike

B Look at the pictures. Do you like the objects or do you think they are a waste of money?

C ▶ 9.3 Listen to people talk about their shopping mistakes. Match speakers 1–5 with pictures A–E.

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____

D Work in groups. Look at the shopping mistakes. Choose one mistake and tell the other students about it.

wrong size

didn't use it

didn't like it

it didn't work

too small

too big

broke it

wrong colour

A: I bought a bike. It was a very good bike, but I didn't use it so I gave it to a friend.

GRAMMAR object pronouns

4A Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Do not use one of the words.

me you them us it her him

- My wife bought me an exercise bike for my birthday. I used _____ three times.
- My boyfriend wanted to go camping so I bought _____ a tent.
- I phoned _____ yesterday, but she didn't answer.
- He loves those drums. He plays _____ every day.
- My mother gave _____ a lamp, but we didn't like it.

B Look at the sentence and complete the table.

She phoned me last night.

subject object
pronoun pronoun

subject pronoun	object pronoun
I	<u>me</u>
you	_____
he	_____
she	_____
it	_____
we	_____
they	_____

C Underline the correct alternatives in the rule.

Rule:

Use a subject pronoun *before/after* a verb. Use an object pronoun *before/after* a verb.

D  **9.4** Listen to the sentences. Notice how we link the verbs and the object pronouns. Then listen and repeat.

I used it. I bought him a tent.
She gave us a lamp. I phoned her yesterday.

 page 134 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

5A Complete the sentences with an object pronoun.

- My bag? I bought it in Spain.
- My shoes? I got _____ from a shop near here.
- My mobile? I don't often use _____.
- My last birthday? My sister gave _____ a pen.
- Did you see me last night? I saw _____.
- Homework in our class? Our teacher gives _____ homework every night.
- A student called Maria? I don't know _____.
- A student called Stefan? I know _____.

B Change the sentences so they are true for you.

My bag? I bought it in Portugal.

C Work in pairs and compare your answers.

WRITING captions



6A Which of captions 1–4 goes with the photo?

- New women's Silver Sports trainers, size 38**
I got the new trainers in Rome. The new trainers are the wrong size.
- A signed photo of Johnny Depp**
I met Johnny Depp in Los Angeles last year. Johnny Depp gave me two photos and I want to sell one of the photos.
- For sale: my Honda 500T**
I bought my Honda 500T in 1998. My Honda 500T is a beautiful motorbike but I don't use my Honda 500T much now.
- The 2009 Tour Book of Beyoncé I AM**
I saw Beyoncé in Caracas. Beyoncé was fantastic but my new flat is too small for all my books.

B Rewrite the captions using pronouns.

- New women's Silver Sports trainers, size 38.**
them *They*
I got ~~the new~~ trainers in Rome. ~~The new~~ trainers are the wrong size.

C Work in pairs. Write captions for two objects to sell online.

D Work in groups and read your captions. Which object do you think is best?

SPEAKING

7A Work alone and think of examples of the things below:

- something that was a waste of money.
- something big you bought last month.
- something you really want to buy now.
- a shop you think is great.
- something you sold because you didn't like it.
- something you gave to someone for free.
- something very expensive you bought.

B Work in pairs and compare your answers.

A: Tell me something that was a waste of money.

B: An electric guitar. I bought it but I never played it.

VOCABULARY shopping departments

1A Work in pairs and look at pictures A–F. Where do you buy these things in your town/city?



B Look at the store guide and match the departments with pictures A–F.

STORE GUIDE

THIRD FLOOR (3)

Furniture & Lighting
Bed & Bath
Travel & Luggage
Sky Restaurant

SECOND FLOOR (2)

Children's Clothes & Shoes
Toys
Computers & Phones
Home Entertainment
Sports

FIRST FLOOR (1)

Women's Clothes & Shoes
Star Café

GROUND FLOOR (G)

Beauty
Jewellery & Watches
Menswear & Shoes

C 9.5 Listen and repeat the departments.

2 Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: you are a customer. Ask about one of the objects below. Which department is it? Student B: you are a shop assistant. Answer Student A.

a laptop

a dress

a DVD

a child's T-shirt

a football

a necklace

A: I want to buy a laptop. Which department is it?

B: Computers and phones.



FUNCTION making requests

3A 9.6 Listen to the conversations and tick the correct answers.

- Tom wants a World Cup:
a) T-shirt. b) computer game.
c) DVD.
- Lisa goes first to:
a) the Sports Department. b) Home Entertainment.
c) Computers and Phones.
- Lisa:
a) finds a gift for Tom. b) doesn't find a gift.
c) finds three gifts.

B 9.7 Complete the sentences. Then listen and check.

- _____ would you like for your birthday?
- _____ you like a football shirt?
- I'd _____ a DVD.

C Look at the table and underline the correct alternatives in the rules.

I'd	like	a computer game.
Would you		this DVD?

Rules:

- I'd like means I like / I want.
- I'd like is polite / not polite.



4A Put the words in the correct order to make conversations.

- 1 A: like / you / Would / coffee / a?
B: I'd / tea / but / No / a / thanks, / like
- 2 A: like / her / Sue / birthday / What / would / for?
B: think / she'd / bike / I / like / a
- 3 A: a / you / Would / break / like?
B: let's / Yes, / for / an / half / stop / hour
- 4 A: sweaters / these / Can / of / I / have / one?
B: like / you / colour / Yes, / which / would?

B 9.8 Listen to the intonation and circle the correct letter: P (polite) or NP (not polite). Then listen again and repeat.

- 1 Would you like a coffee? P NP
- 2 Would you like a coffee? P NP
- 3 I'd like a tea, please. P NP
- 4 I'd like a tea, please. P NP

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read out a request from Exercise 4B. Student B: listen and say *polite* or *not polite*.

LEARN TO use hesitation phrases

5A Look at the sentences from the conversation.

Underline six different ways to give yourself time to think.

A: What would you like for your birthday?

B: Oh, I don't know. Let me think ...

B: Um ... well ... maybe something from the World Cup.

A: Which DVD is best?

E: Er ... let me see ... this one has all the important games.

speakout TIP

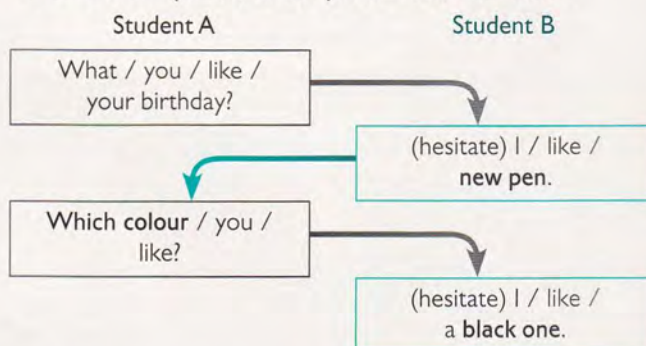
When you need time to think, use hesitation phrases: *Er/Um ...*, *Let me think/see/look ...*, *Well ...*. What sounds or words do you use in your language to do this?

B 9.9 Listen to the questions and use hesitation phrases before you answer.

C Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 150. Student B: turn to page 152. Ask and answer the questions. Use hesitation phrases.

SPEAKING

6A Work in pairs and complete the conversation.



B Work in pairs and take turns. Practise the conversation.

C Work alone. Write three things you would like for your birthday.

D Work in pairs and practise the conversation with different gifts. Change the words in bold.



DVD PREVIEW

1A Put items A–F in order on the timeline.



A CD (compact disc)



B video cassette



C jukebox



D iPod



E audio cassette



F Walkman

B Read the programme information and check your answers. One item is not in the text.

BBC Days That Shook The World: Into The 21st Century

In the nineteen-fifties people listened to music on jukeboxes; in the sixties and seventies it was the audio cassette. When the Sony Walkman and the compact disc, or CD, arrived in the nineteen-eighties, there was a big change in the music world, but that was only the start. Apple introduced its first MP3 player, the iPod, in October 2001, and the music world changed forever. This episode of the BBC's *Days That Shook The World* looks at how this small machine changed our lives.



DVD VIEW

2A Watch the DVD. Which items in the photos are in the programme?

B Work in pairs and choose the correct alternative. Then watch the DVD again to check your answers.

- 1 People walked around with thousands of their *best/favourite* songs ...
- 2 ... the iPod was really *different/good*. It was fun.
- 3 It looked good with its touch control and *small/white* headphones.
- 4 Students listened to their *lessons/teachers* at home.
- 5 *People/Tourists* listened to audio tours in cities.
- 6 Bands used the internet to *send/give* their music to people's computers and MP3 players.
- 7 The *old/new* technology of the eighties and nineties is now rubbish.

C Work in pairs and discuss. What do you listen to on your music player?

speakout a possession

3A Think about one of your favourite possessions. Use the questions below to make notes about it.

Possession: _____

- Where did you get it?
- Where is it now?
- What do you do with it?
- Why do you like it?

Other information: _____

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions above.

C  **9.10** Listen to someone talk about a favourite possession and answer the questions in Exercise 3A.

D Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

One of my favourite (things/possessions) is ...

It's (very small /big/red).

I keep it (in my bag/pocket/at home).

I bought it (last year/in New York).

(My brother/wife/best friend) gave it to me ...
for (my birthday/Christmas)

I like it because it's (easy to use/useful/beautiful).

4A Work with a new partner. Practise talking about a favourite possession. Use the key phrases to help.

B Work in groups and take turns. Tell other students about your favourite possession.

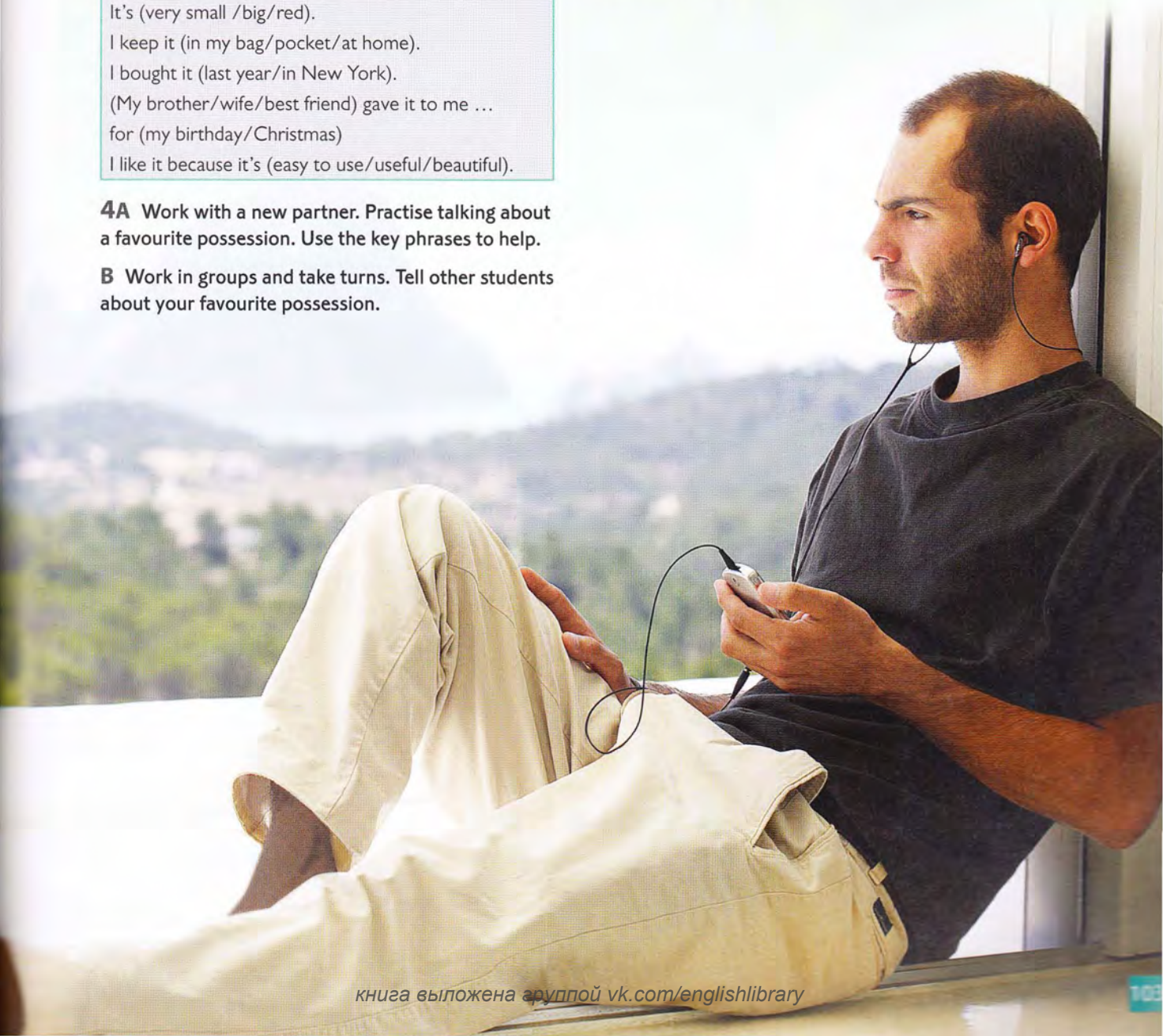
writeback a favourite possession

5A Read the text. Which questions from Exercise 3A does it answer?

My bike

One of my favourite things is my bike. My friends gave it to me for my eighteenth birthday. It's a 1990s *TREK 720*. It's now twenty years old but I like it because it's good in all types of weather. It's also good in the city. I ride it to work every day and I keep it in the street near my workplace. At home I keep it in the garden. It's not new, but it's a fantastic little bike.

B Write a description of a favourite possession. Write 50–80 words.



LIKE, LOVE, HATE + -ING

1A Complete the questions.

- 1 you / like / read?
Do you like reading?
- 2 What / you / like / read?
- 3 What / TV programme / you / like / watch?
- 4 Who / you / like / phone?
- 5 What / you / like / eat / for dinner?
- 6 you / like / travel / by plane?
- 7 What / sport / like / do?
- 8 What / music / like / listen / to?

B Work in pairs and take turns.
Ask and answer the questions.

ACTIVITIES

2A Add the vowels to complete the activities.

- 1 c__mp__ng
- 2 c__k__ng
- 3 g__ng __n l__ng w__lks
- 4 ch__tt__ng __nl__n__
- 5 r__nn__ng
- 6 g__ng t__ th__ th__tr__
- 7 pl__y__ng c__mp__tr__g__m__s
- 8 r__l__x__ng
- 9 t__k__ng ph__ts
- 10 sw__mm__ng

B Work in pairs and take turns.
Student A: choose an activity. Think of the place you do it and an object you need. Student B: ask questions and guess the activity.

B: Where do you do it?

A: In the countryside.

B: What do you need?

A: A tent.

B: Camping?

A: Yes!

MONEY

3A Put the letters in the correct order to make verbs.

- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 1 ybu buy | 4 tocs |
| 2 vegi | 5 etg |
| 3 lels | 6 apy |

B Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs above.

- 1 I buy a new mobile phone once a year.
- 2 Food ____ too much.
- 3 My manager ____ me well.
- 4 I ____ money to poor people.
- 5 For my birthday I always ____ clothes from my family.
- 6 I never ____ things to my friends.

C Tick the sentences in Exercise 3B that you agree with. Then compare with a partner.

OBJECT PRONOUNS

4A Match sentences 1–6 with a)–f). Use the underlined pronoun to help.

- 1 I don't know them. f
- 2 I hate it.
- 3 They bring us food.
- 4 I like him.
- 5 They often phone me.
- 6 I saw her yesterday.

- a) my sister
- b) my friends
- c) waiters
- d) ice cream
- e) Robert Pattinson
- f) The Rolling Stones

B Write people and things that are true for you for 1–6.

- 1 I don't know them.
The students in the next class.

C Work in pairs and take turns.
Student A: say one thing on your list. Student B: say the sentence that matches.

A: Elvis Presley.

B: You like him.

A: Yes!

SHOPPING DEPARTMENTS

5A Correct one spelling mistake in each department name.

- 1 Jewellery & Waches
- 2 Computers & Fones
- 3 Furniture & Liting
- 4 Travel & Lugage
- 5 Home Entertanement
- 6 Bed & Bathh
- 7 Menswhere & Shoes
- 8 Beauty
- 9 Childrins clothes & Shoes
- 10 Toyz

B Work in pairs and discuss.
What's your favourite department in a store? What do you usually buy there?

MAKING REQUESTS

6A Find and correct six mistakes in the conversation.

A: I can help you? *Can I*

B: Yes, I would this pen.

A: OK. Is he a present?

B: Er ... yes.

A: Which wrapping paper you would like – red or green?

B: I'd like the green paper.

A: Where is the gift for?

B: For I. Today is my birthday!

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

C Work alone. Change the words in bold for your part (A or B).

D Work in pairs. Practise the new conversation.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about going shopping on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

UNIT

10

SPEAKING

- › Discuss the best job for you
- › Talk about plans
- › Start and end conversations
- › Talk about when you tried something new

LISTENING

- › Listen to job interviews
- › Listen to street interviews about people's goals
- › Listen to people start and end conversations
- › Watch a BBC comedy about a funny woman

READING

- › Read about interesting jobs

WRITING

- › Check your writing
- › Write an interview about something new

BBC CONTENT

- ▶ Video podcast: What did you want to be?
- ▶ DVD: Miranda

plans



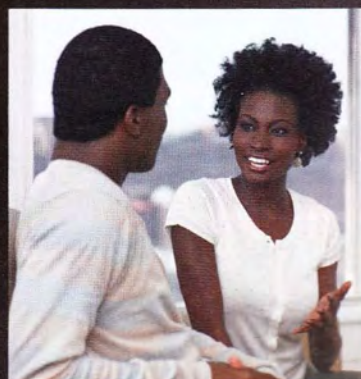
▶ A new job

p106



▶ Time for a change

p108



▶ Hello and goodbye

p110



▶ Miranda

p112



10.1 A NEW JOB

► **GRAMMAR** | can/can't

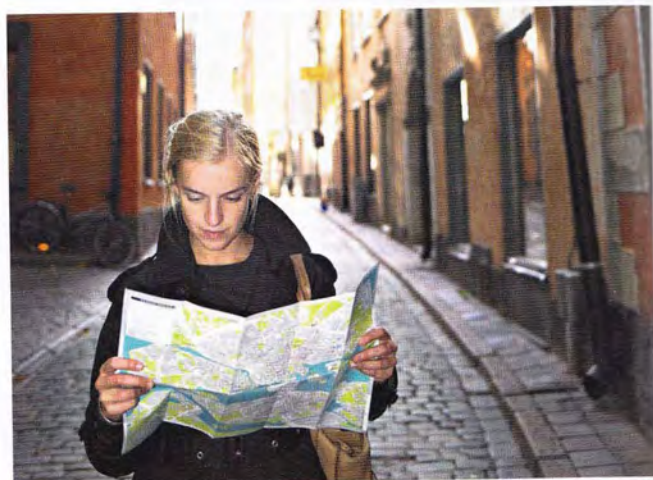
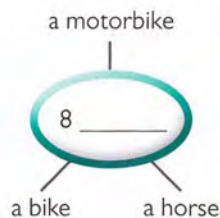
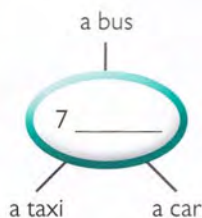
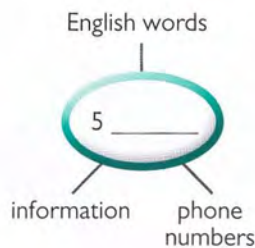
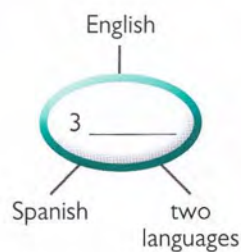
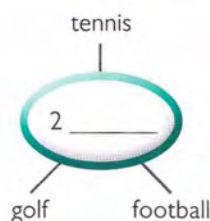
► **VOCABULARY** | collocations

► **HOW TO** | talk about ability

VOCABULARY collocations

1A Work in pairs and complete the word webs with the verbs in the box. Which activities are in the photos?

cook ride speak drive play make read remember



B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a verb. Student B: say three nouns that go with the verb. Student A: try to add more nouns.

A: read

B: read music, read a map, read Arabic

A: read a book, read a newspaper

READING

2A Read the job adverts below. Which job is best for you? Which one is not good for you? Why?

JOBS

1 Tour guide

Tourist service needs a tour guide to take small groups of tourists on visits to the old town. You need to speak English and one other language, and you need a good memory for facts. Driving licence also needed. Contact us at tourguides.extra@hayoo.com.

2 Pizza delivery person

Can you ride a motorbike? Do you know the city well? Are you friendly but can you also work alone? We are a small pizza business. We need a delivery person to take pizzas to people's houses. Sometimes we need help in the kitchen, cleaning and cooking. Contact us at superza@zmail.com.

3 Singer/Guitarist

We're a student rock band and last week we lost our lead singer/guitarist. There are two of us (on drums and bass guitar) and we play rock music from the 90s and write new songs. Are you a good singer? Can you play guitar? It's also good if you can dance. Email davylee111@bigmail.com or phone 0382 444 1836 and ask for Davy.

B Read about jobs 1–3 again. Correct the sentences below. One sentence is correct.

- 1a) You need to speak three languages.
- b) You need a car.
- 2a) You work in the kitchen every day.
- b) You need to live in the city.
- 3a) The rock band would like a dancer.
- b) The group's songs are from the 90s.

3A 10.1 Listen to three interviews. Which job do the people want? Do they get the jobs?

B Listen again. Why do/don't they get the jobs?

GRAMMAR *can/can't*

4A Complete the sentences with *can* or *can't*.

—	you	sing? make pizzas?
Yes, No,	I	— —

+	I/You/He/She	—	play guitar. drive.
—	We/They	—	

B Underline the correct alternative to complete the rule.

Rule:

Use *can* or *can't* to talk about your ability/activities you do every day.

C 10.2 Listen. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 can /kən/ 1
- 2 can /kæn/
- 3 can't /kɑːnt/

D 10.3 Listen to six sentences. Which of the sounds (1, 2 or 3) above do you hear? Write the number.

page 136 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

5A Complete the questions with *can*.

- 1 you / play tennis? *Can you play tennis?*
- 2 he / sing?
- 3 Barbara / ride a horse?
- 4 you / dance?
- 5 you and your friend / speak Italian?
- 6 George / read Chinese?

B Write answers to the questions above.

- 1 No, I can't, but I can play football.
- 2 Yes, .
- 3 No, .
- 4 Yes, , and sing, too.
- 5 No, , but Spanish.
- 6 Yes, , but speak Chinese.

page 147 **PHOTOBANK**

SPEAKING

6A Work in pairs and look at the quiz. Take turns to ask questions and complete the quiz for your partner.

A: Can you dance?

B: Yes, I can, but not very well.

What is your perfect job?

5 = very well 3 = quite well 1 = not very well 0 = I can't

Can you ...

A	B	C
dance ...	play football ...	play chess ...
sing ...	play tennis ...	read a map ...
act ...	ride a horse ...	speak another language ...
play guitar or piano ...	run five kilometres ...	remember information ...

B Turn to the key on page 152. What's the best job for your partner?

C Work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you think the quiz is right about you?
- 2 What job would you like to do?

A: The quiz says a good job for me is in sports, but I'd like to be a doctor. I like helping people. What about you?

B: I'd like to be a ...

10.2 TIME FOR A CHANGE

► GRAMMAR | be going to

► VOCABULARY | life changes

► HOW TO | talk about plans

VOCABULARY | life changes

1A Read the list of top ten goals. Which ones can you see in the pictures?

Top ten goals

People often want to make changes in their life: their job, their lifestyle, their relationships. They talk about it, they buy a self-help book ... but usually nothing changes, and then a year later the same goal comes back again. They say, 'This time, I'm *really* going to make a change!'

We asked our readers: 'What are your goals?'

Here are their top ten:

- 1 stop smoking
- 2 get fit
- 3 spend more time with friends and family
- 4 work less and relax more
- 5 help others
- 6 get organised
- 7 lose weight
- 8 learn something new
- 9 save money
- 10 change jobs

B Read the list again. Work in pairs. Do you want to do any of these things?

A: I want to get organised.

B: Me, too! And I want to ...

LISTENING

2A  10.4 Listen to five people talk about their goals. Write the number(s) from the list in Exercise 1A next to the name.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Tom <u>8</u> | 4 Rudi <u> </u> |
| 2 Fiona <u> </u> | 5 Alex <u> </u> |
| 3 Liam <u> </u> | |

B Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Tom's girlfriend can't cook.
- 2 He wants to learn Japanese cooking.
- 3 Fiona wants to work in an office.
- 4 Liam plans to stop watching TV.
- 5 Rudi's a good tennis player.
- 6 He plans to walk a lot.
- 7 Alex plans to spend more time with her friends.
- 8 She likes shopping.

C Work in pairs and discuss. Which people are similar to you? Why?



GRAMMAR *be going to*

3A Look at sentences a)–d) and answer the questions.

- Are they about the present or future?
 - Which are positive (+) and negative (–)?
- I'm going to learn to cook.
 - My friend Sheila is going to help me.
 - Then you aren't going to save money!
 - Yes, but I'm not going to stop shopping.

B Complete the table.

I'm		change jobs.
You' _	going _	work less.
She' _		get fit.

C Complete the negative form. Put *n't* in the correct place in the sentences.

He is going to be there.

We are going to come.

D **10.5** Listen and check your answers to Exercises 3B and 3C. Then listen again and repeat. Pay attention to the pronunciation of *going to* /gəʊɪŋ tə/.

page 136 **LANGUAGEBANK**

PRACTICE

4A Complete the sentences with *be going to*.

- After class, / I / have / a coffee.
After class, I'm going to have a coffee.
- I / not / do / the homework / tonight.
- Tonight, / the teacher / watch / TV.
- I / not / write / any emails / tomorrow.
- Tomorrow afternoon, / I / relax.
- On Friday, / my friends and I / see a film.

B Tick the sentences that are true for you. Change the ones that are not true.

C Work in pairs and compare your answers.

A: *After class, I'm going to have a coffee.*
What about you?

B: *I'm not going to have a coffee. I'm going to have lunch.*

D Work in groups. Say one thing about your partner's plans and one thing about your plans.

A: *Tomorrow afternoon, Jan's going to relax, but I'm going to play football in the park.*

SPEAKING

5A Look at the picture. Write your five plans or goals in the boxes.

B Work in groups and take turns. Tell other students your plans.

Next summer, I'm going to work in a hotel.

WRITING *checking your work*

6A Read the email. Find and correct:

- five mistakes with the punctuation/capitalisation.
- five mistakes with the verbs.

Hi
Hi Elif,

Thanks for your email. Heres the information about my plans. I'm going be in Istanbul on sunday for three days. Can we to meet? My hotel is the FiveStar in Topsu Street. I going to visit the Blue Mosque on Monday and Id like to look around the markets. Can we have lunch together one day. Are Tuesday good for you? Email me or texted me.

Jayne

speakout TIP

After you write something, check your writing. You can check punctuation and verbs. What other things can you check?

B Write an email to another student. Give your plans and arrange a time to meet for lunch. Use the email above to help.

C Work in pairs. Check each other's emails. Use your ideas from the Speakout Tip to help.

D Answer your partner's email.

10.3 HELLO AND GOODBYE

► **FUNCTION** | conversations

► **VOCABULARY** | saying goodbye

► **LEARN TO** | respond naturally



2A Complete the conversations with the words in the box. Then check audio script 10.6 on page 160.

great going have (x 2) talk around this think friend time

- 1 A: Hey, this is a ¹ great place.
B: Yes, it's really good. I often come here.
- 2 B: ... Let's have coffee.
A: OK ... wait, is that the ² _____? I'm sorry, I ³ _____ a lesson at two.
- 3 A: Excuse me, do you ⁴ _____ the time?
B: Yes, it's half past four.
A: So where are you ⁵ _____?
- 4 B: ... I moved to Madrid when I was ten.
A: I see ... oh, look, ⁶ _____ is my station.
- 5 A: What do you ⁷ _____ of the music?
B: It's not bad.
- 6 A: So are you from ⁸ _____ here?
- 7 B: I'm sorry, I can see an old ⁹ _____ over there. Nice to ¹⁰ _____ to you.
A: Oh ... and you.

FUNCTION conversations

1A Work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 How do you say hello and goodbye in your country?
- 2 How do you start a conversation with a stranger? What do you talk about?

B **10.6** Listen to the conversations and write friends (F) or strangers (S).

1 ____ 2 ____ 3 ____

C Listen again. Why does the person end the conversation? Tick the correct reason a)–c).

Conversation 1

- a) He wants a coffee.
- b) He has a lesson.
- c) He has no money for lunch.

Conversation 2

- a) She's going to get off the train.
- b) She lost her bank card.
- c) She doesn't like the man.

Conversation 3

- a) She wants to leave the party.
- b) She doesn't speak any languages.
- c) She thinks he's boring.

B Work in pairs and look at the conversations above. Find:

- 1 five phrases for starting a conversation
This is a great place.
- 2 five phrases for finishing a conversation
Is that the time?

C **10.7** Listen and underline the stressed words. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 What do you think of the music?
- 2 Are you from around here?
- 3 Is that the time?
- 4 Nice to talk to you.

page 136 **LANGUAGEBANK**

книга выложена группой vk.com/englishlibrary

3A Complete the conversations.

Student A

Student B

This / be / good / party.

Yes, / it / be. What / you / think / food?

It / be / good.

I / be / (your name).

Hi, / I / be / (your name).

you / around / here?

Yes / I / live in / (place).

be / that / time?

Yes, / I / have / class / half past six.

And my train / leave / quarter past.

Nice / talk / you.

Nice / talk / you, too.

B Work in pairs and take turns to practise the conversations.

LEARN TO respond naturally

4A Work in pairs. How can B respond naturally to A?

- A: This is a great place.
B: _____.
- A: Very nice to meet you.
B: _____.
- A: I hope we meet again.
B: _____.
- A: Here's my card.
B: _____.

B 10.8 Listen and complete the conversations above.

speakout TIP

There are a lot of two-line conversations in English. For example:

A: How are you?

B: Fine, thanks. And you?

Learn these two-line conversations to help your speaking.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Use the prompts below to practise the two-line conversations in Exercise 4A.

my card

meet again

great place

nice to meet

VOCABULARY saying goodbye

5A Complete the phrases for saying goodbye and leaving. Use audio script 10.6 on page 160 to help.

- I see you s_____
- see you i_____ two w_____
- keep in t_____
- b_____
- see you l_____

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say goodbye. Student B: answer with a different phrase.

A: Bye.

B: See you later.

SPEAKING

6A You are going to role-play a party. Work in pairs and write three ways to start a conversation. You can say/ask something about:

- the food
- the music
- the party
- the other person's plans for the weekend
- last weekend

B Role-play the party. Have conversations with other people. After about one minute, finish the conversation politely and move to another person.

Hi, Luca. This is a great ...

Hi, Jan. What do you think of the ... ?

Hi, Marta. What are your plans for ... ?

Nice to chat to you.

Is that the time?



DVD PREVIEW

1A Work in pairs and discuss the questions. Use the ideas below to help. What problems can you have when you:

- learn something new?
- change jobs?
- go to a new place?
- spend time with friends?
- try to get fit?

You have the wrong clothes.

You break something.

The teacher doesn't like you.

You make mistakes.

You feel stupid.

It's too expensive.

You don't know the people.

You aren't good at it.

You're bored.

You don't understand what to do.

B Read the programme information and answer the questions.

- 1 What does Miranda want to do?
- 2 Which things from Exercise 1A does she try?

BBC Miranda

*M*iranda is a BBC comedy show, and Miranda is the star of the show. She's thirty-something, isn't very fit, doesn't like her job, and doesn't have a boyfriend. In this episode Miranda wants to change her life and become the 'New Me.' So she goes to the gym, to dance lessons, and to a Japanese restaurant with her friends ... but for Miranda, there's always a problem!



DVD VIEW

2A Watch the DVD. Match the problems and the places.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 the gym | a) The teacher didn't like her. |
| 2 the restaurant | b) She broke things. |
| 3 the dance class | c) She didn't understand what to do. |
| | d) She wasn't good at it. |
| | e) She was stuck. |

B Which phrases did Miranda say? Write M next to them.

- a) Excuse me. *M*
- b) Are you OK?
- c) Help! Make it stop please!
- d) Sorry about this.
- e) Hello again.
- f) She is amazing.
- g) You are a natural.
- h) Really?

C Watch the DVD again to check your answers.



speakout something new

3A Think about a time when you tried to learn something new. Look at the questions below and make notes:

- 1 What did you try to learn? When? Why?
- 2 Did you do it alone or with a friend?
- 3 Did you have a teacher? Was he or she good?
- 4 What happened?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions above.

C  **10.9** Listen to a woman talk about learning something new. Answer the questions in Exercise 3A.

D Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

keyphrases

I wanted to learn (to play guitar/to cook) because ...

I went to a class.

I tried to learn it (alone/with a friend).

I was/wasn't (very) good at it.

The teacher was (great/good/not very good).

After (four/six) months I (played guitar/did it) really well.

I still (do it/play) every day.

4A Work with a new partner and tell each other your stories. Use the key phrases to help.

B Work in groups and take turns. Student A: tell your story. Other students: ask one question.

writeback an interview

5A Read the start of the magazine interview and answer the questions.

- 1 What did the person try to learn? Why?
- 2 Do you know how to do this activity?
- 3 If yes, do you like it? If no, would you like to learn to do it?

Something new

Q: What did you try to learn?

A: How to use *Twitter*.

Q: Why did you want to learn it?

A: Because all my friends use *Twitter*.

Q: When was this?

A: Last summer. I can't remember when exactly.

Q: So, how did you learn?

A: Well, I asked a friend for help.

Q: What happened?

A: We tried ...

B Write a magazine interview about another student's learning story.

COLLOCATIONS

1A The verbs are in the wrong sentences. Put them in the correct sentence.

- 1 I often *speak* Italian food. *cook*
- 2 I read tennis every weekend.
- 3 It's easy to ride maps.
- 4 I play two languages.
- 5 I cook all my clothes.
- 6 I remember my bike to work.
- 7 I would like to make a bus.
- 8 It's easy to drive phone numbers.

B Add two more words/phrases to each verb.

cook lunch, cook pasta

C Work in pairs. Which sentences in Exercise 1A are true for you?

CAN/CAN'T

2A Use the words to make five questions with *What ... can ... ?*
What languages can you speak?

languages
songs
sports
food
important dates

cook
speak
play
remember
sing

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

LIFE CHANGES

3A Underline the correct alternative.

- 1 get organised / new
- 2 change *smoking* / jobs
- 3 save *money* / weight
- 4 learn something *new* / others
- 5 spend more *jobs* / time with friends
- 6 work *money* / less and relax more
- 7 help *organised* / others
- 8 stop *smoking* / fit
- 9 lose *weight* / time with friends
- 10 get *less and relax more* / fit

B Work in pairs and discuss. Which life changes are easy, and which are difficult?

A: I think it's easy to get organised.

B: For me, it's difficult.

BE GOING TO

4A Look at the list. Write the man's plans for the day.

*He's going to go to the supermarket.
He's going to buy some milk and cheese.*

To do:

supermarket – milk, cheese

café – Sue and Jenny

gym

cash machine – 200 euros

newsagent's – newspaper

pharmacy – aspirin

B Write a list of four places you're going to next week.

C Work in pairs. Look at your partner's list and guess what he/she is going to do.

A: The park. OK, you're going to walk in the park.

B: No.

A: You're going to play football.

B: Yes.

SAYING GOODBYE

5 Find and correct the mistakes.

- 1 See you late.
- 2 By.
- 3 See you one week.
- 4 Keep on touch.
- 5 See soon

CONVERSATIONS

6A Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

are minutes there nice (x 2)
that you do

A: Hi!

B: Oh, hi. How ^{are} you?

A: Good, thanks. This is a café.

B: Yes, I sometimes come here for lunch.

A: Really? What you think of the food?

B: Er ... it's good. Wait, is the time?

A: No, that clock's wrong. It's **two** o'clock.

B: Oh no, my **train** leaves in five!

A: No problem. There's a train every half hour.

B: Sorry, I can see an **old friend** over.

A: Oh, OK. to talk to you.

B: And to you. See soon ...

B Work in pairs and practise the conversation.

C Change the words in bold.

D Work with a new partner. Practise the new conversation.

A: Hi!

B: Oh, hi. How are you?

B: Fine, thanks. This is a nice hotel.

A: Yes, I sometimes come here for dinner.

BBC VIDEO PODCAST



Watch people talking about the jobs they wanted to do on ActiveBook or on the website.

Authentic BBC interviews

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

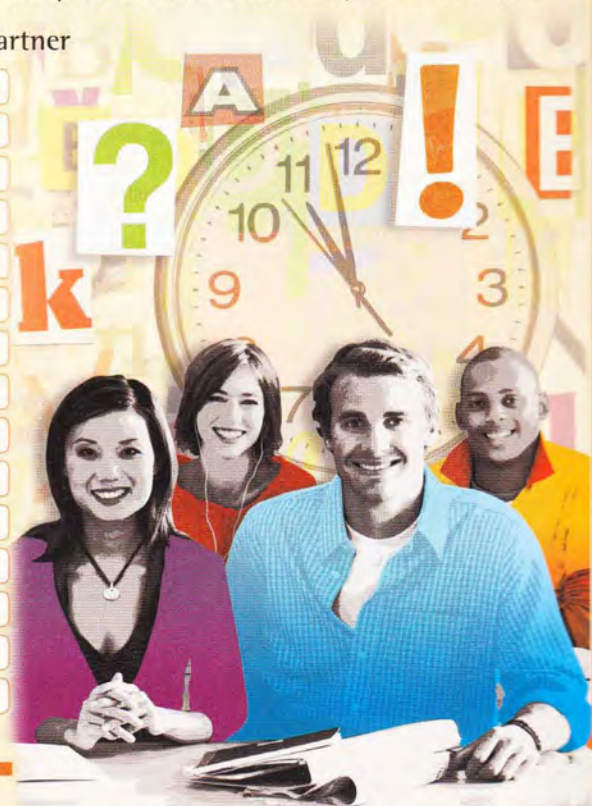
What can you do in English?

Now is a good time to stop and think about your learning. Look at the questionnaire. What can you do in English?

Tick the boxes for You.

- 1 I can count to a hundred and say the alphabet.
- 2 I can talk about my family.
- 3 I can order food and drink in a café.
- 4 I can pronounce /bægz/ and /mʌðə/.
- 5 I can ask someone about their daily routines.
- 6 I can describe my breakfast this morning.
- 7 I can tell the time.
- 8 I can talk about transport in my town.
- 9 I can buy a train ticket.
- 10 I can use correct punctuation in my writing.
- 11 I can answer questions about my last holiday.
- 12 I can use intonation to sound interested.
- 13 I can give simple directions in a shop.
- 14 I can talk about my likes and dislikes.
- 15 I can talk about my plans for next year.

You Your partner

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐


READING AND GRAMMAR

1A Work alone and complete the questionnaire for you.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Complete the questionnaire for your partner.

A: Can you ... ?

B: Yes, I can. How about you?

A: Yes, I think I can. Can you ... ?

C Complete the sentences about you with the words in the box.

reading listening speaking writing
grammar pronunciation spelling
vocabulary

1 _____ and _____ in English are OK for me.

2 I want to improve my _____ and _____ in English.

D Work in pairs and compare your answers.

2A Read the text from a student's diary. Then replace the underlined words with the pronouns in the box.

her she we they me he us (x 2)
them him

Julia, my teacher, often corrects my pronunciation and so I asked ¹my teacher to help ²!.

In the next lesson, Julia took the class to the computer room and ³Julia gave ⁴the class books.

The books were in very easy English and ⁵the books were all different. Then ⁶the class read our books and listened to ⁷the books on a CD. Then Julia asked ⁸the class to say the words with the speaker on the CD.

I think this is a good way to improve my pronunciation and my friend, Juan, said it was good for ⁹Juan too. ¹⁰Juan has problems with listening in English. He said reading and listening together was useful.

B Work in pairs and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you read books or magazines or websites in English? Which ones?
- 2 Do you read and listen to books at the same time? Why is this useful?
- 3 Do you sometimes listen and say the words with the speaker? Why is this useful?

LISTENING AND GRAMMAR

3A ▶ R5.1 Listen to students talk about learning English. Match the speaker and the problem.

Speaker	Problem
1	Speaking
2	Grammar
3	Vocabulary
4	Writing
5	Listening

B Listen again and underline the correct alternative.

- I'm going to learn *seven* / *ten* new words every day.
- I'm going to look at the BBC news website and *read* / *write* down new words.
- In the *lesson* / *coffee break*, I'm not going to speak in my language.
- I'm going to listen to my CD and read the audio scripts *at the same time* / *sometimes*.
- I'm going to *write* / *read* a diary every night, in English.
- I'm going to write about my *life* / *day*.

C Which three things in Exercise 3B do you think are the best ideas?

SPEAKING

4A Work alone. Choose two learning goals from column A. Make notes about your plans in column B. Use ideas from Exercise 3A and your own ideas.

A	B
I want to improve my ...	so I'm going to ...
reading	
writing	
listening	
speaking	
vocabulary	
grammar	
pronunciation	

B Work in groups and take turns. Tell other students about your plans.

5 Work in groups. Look at page 117 and play the Speakout Game.

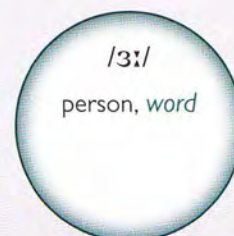
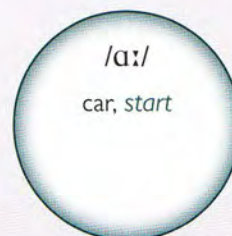
SOUNDS: /ɑ:/ AND /ɜ:/

6A ▶ R5.2 Listen to the sounds and the words. Then listen and repeat.

/ɑ:/	/ɜ:/
	
car	person

B ▶ R5.3 Listen and put the words in the box in the correct group. Then listen and repeat.

start word first last party learn
girlfriend guitarist can't work circle dance



7A Work in pairs. Complete the word and circle the sound in each word.

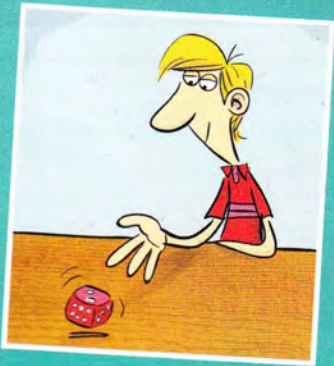
	/ɑ:/
a country	<u>Ar</u> gentina
a fruit	b_____
a month	M_____
a form of be	a_____
an adjective	f_____
a time of day	a_____
a verb	l_____

	/ɜ:/
a nationality	G_____
a colour	p_____
a type of clothes	s_____
a day	Th_____
a form of be	w_____
an adjective	th_____
a number	th_____

B Work with another pair and compare.

SPEAKOUT GAME

Work in groups and take turns. Student A: roll the dice and move your counter to the correct square. Look at the colour of the square and follow the instructions on the square in the same colour at the top.



Talk for thirty seconds about this

Say and spell three words

Make and ask the question

Say three phrases from this situation

Start	1 your town/city or country	2 transport	3 what/you/usually/do/at the weekend?	4 ordering in a café	5 your family
11 countries	10 why/you/like/speak/ English?	9 asking for information about a concert	8 a favourite object	7 places	6 what/you/do/tonight?
12 buying a train ticket	13 shopping	14 drink	15 what/you/do/last weekend?	16 telling the time	17 your daily routine
23 food	22 you/here/this time last week?	21 giving directions	20 your diet	19 adjectives for feelings	18 what/your favourite subject/in school?
24 starting a conversation	25 how you travel	26 colours	27 be/good restaurant/near here?	28 in a hotel	29 your life ten years ago
35 jobs	34 what time/you/get home/every day?	33 asking the teacher a classroom question	32 last weekend	31 clothes	30 you/happy?
36 making a request	37 your perfect job	38 office objects	39 when/you/last/travel/by boat?	40 ending a conversation	Finish!

Is it my turn?

Let's ask the teacher.

It's your turn.

GRAMMAR

1.1 be: I/you

Positive			
+	I	'm am	Junko.
	You	're are	from Japan.

Negative			
-	I	'm not am not	Felipa.
	You	aren't are not	from Peru. from here.

I'm = *I am*. *You're* = *You are*. Use contractions (*I'm*, *you're*) in speaking.

Questions				
?	Where	am	I?	
		are	you	from?
		Am	I	right?
		Are	you	Ed Black? from Sydney?

Short answers		
Yes,	I	am.
	you	are.
No,	I	'm not.
	you	aren't.

Use short answers to *yes/no* questions: *Are you David Snow?* Yes, *I am David Snow.*

Don't use contractions in positive short answers: *Yes, I am.* NOT *Yes, I'm.*

Use *be* with names: *I'm Olga.*

Use *be* to say or ask where a person is from: *Are you from Russia?*

Use *be* with ages: *I'm nine.*

I'm in classroom 3. *Am I in classroom 3?*

You're Jim. *Are you Jim?*

Use *be* + subject (*I/you*) for questions.

1.2 be: he/she/it

Positive and negative			
+	He	's is	a doctor.
	She		from Germany.
	It		in South Africa.
-	He/She/It	isn't is not	right.

Questions				
?	Where	is	he/she/it	from?
		Is		in Australia?

Use *be* + subject (*he/she/it*) for questions.

She's a student. *Is she a student?*

Short answers		
Yes,	he/she/it	is.
No,		isn't.

Use short answers to *yes/no* questions: *Is she from Spain?* Yes, *she is.*

Don't use contractions in positive short answers: *Yes, it is.* NOT *Yes, it's.*

Use *be* + *a/an* to talk about jobs: *I'm a nurse.* *He's an actor.*

He's, she's, it's = *he is, she is, it is.*

He isn't, she isn't, it isn't = *he is not, she is not, it is not.*

Use contractions (*he's, she's*, etc.) in speaking.

1.3 giving personal information

What's	your	first name?
What is		family name?
		nationality?
		job?
		phone number? email address?

I'm	Argentinian. an engineer.
-----	------------------------------

It's	Marie. 0147385. marie.973@hotmail.com
------	---

For email addresses, say: *marie dot nine seven three at hotmail dot com.*

For telephone numbers, for *0*, say *oh* in British English. In American English, say *oh* or *zero*.

PRACTICE

1.1 A Complete the conversation with words in the box.

'm Am 're I you
I'm 'm Are not
I'm aren't you're

A: Hi, I ¹ m Wayne.

B: Hi, ² _____ 'm Jed.

A: ³ _____ you from Australia?

B: ⁴ _____ I from Australia?

A: Yes.

B: No, I'm ⁵ _____.

A: You ⁶ _____ from Australia. Really?

B: That's right. ⁷ _____ from New Zealand.

A: You ⁸ _____ from New Zealand! Where in New Zealand?

B: I ⁹ _____ from Wellington.

A: Oh, ¹⁰ _____ from Wellington, New Zealand. Nice.

B: Thanks.

A: Are ¹¹ _____ OK?

B: No, ¹² _____ not!



B Put the words in the correct order. Start with the underlined word.

A: ¹ I / George / 'm / Hi. Hi, I'm George.

B: ² are / from / Where / you?

A: ³ 'm / Italy / from / I.

B: ⁴ from / Are / Rome / you?

A: ⁵ I'm / No / not. ⁶ Venice / from / I'm.

⁷ you / from / Rome / Are?

B: ⁸ from / I'm / Italy / No / not.

⁹ Barcelona, / I'm / Spain / from / in.

1.2 A Complete the answers.

1 Where's Kuala Lumpur?

It / Malaysia. It's in Malaysia.

2 Where's Edinburgh?

It / Scotland. _____.

3 Where's Roger Federer from?

He / Switzerland. _____.

4 Is Angela Merkel from Germany?

Yes, / she. _____.

5 Is Hyundai from Japan?

No, / it. It / South Korea. _____.

6 Where's the Maracanã Stadium?

It / Brazil. _____.

7 Is Emma Watson from the US?

No, / she. She / England. _____.

8 Is Buenos Aires in Brazil?

No, / it. It / Argentina. _____.

B Complete the questions.

1 Where's Frank?

He's in New York.

2 _____ Maria _____?

She's from Portugal.

3 _____ Auckland _____ Australia?

No, it isn't. It's in New Zealand.

4 _____ Dublin?

It's in Ireland.

5 _____ waiter?

No, he's a customer.

6 _____ teacher?

No, she's a student.

7 _____ from Germany?

Yes, it is.

8 _____ Magda?

She's in Warsaw.

1.3 A Find and correct the mistakes in the conversation. There are six mistakes.

A: What ^s your first name?

B: Ana.

A: And what's your family name?

B: I'm Fernandez.

A: What's you nationality?

B: I'm Italian.

A: And your number phone?

B: It's 0372 952 594.

A: What's email address?

B: It's anastella247@hotmail.com.

A: How you spell 'anastella'? With one 'n'?

B: Yes, one 'n' and two 'l's.

GRAMMAR

2.1 be: you/we/they

Positive and negative			
+	You	're	students from India.
	We	are	
-	They	aren't	married.*
		are not	

*married = husband and wife

Use *you* for one person or for two, three, four, etc. people.



you



you



Questions and short answers				
?	Where	are	you/we/they	from?
		Are		in the right room?
		Yes,	you/we/they	are.
		No,		aren't.



They're married. Are they married?

Use *be* + subject (*you/we/they*) for questions.

Use short answers to yes/no questions: *Are you students?*

Yes, we are. NOT Yes, we're students.

Don't use contractions in positive short answers:

Yes, they are. NOT Yes, they're.

2.2 possessive adjectives: my/your/his/her/its/our/their

subject pronoun	possessive adjective
I	my
you	your
he	his
she	her
it	its
we	our
they	their

Use *your pens*, NOT *yours pens*.

Use *its* for things and animals.

Look at the spelling:

It's = it is. *It's a cat.*

Its = possessive: *Its name is Lucky.* NOT *It's name is Lucky.*



My name's Paolo.



Its name's Lucky.



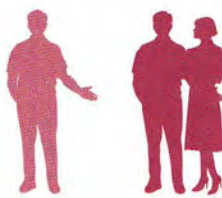
His name's Rob.



Our family name's Romano.



Her name's Ana.



Their names are Sarah and Nick.

2.3 making suggestions p24

suggestions	response
Let's (Let us)	go. stop. eat.
Let's not	have a coffee. have a break. sit down.

Use *let's* + verb to suggest a good idea.

It is a suggestion for you and me.

The negative is *Let's not* + verb: *Let's not go.*

PRACTICE

2.1 A Change the words in bold to *they, we* or *you*.

1 Kevin and Nick are actors.

They're actors.

2 Michelle and I are from France.

3 You and Chan are in the wrong room.

4 Are your mother and father Brazilian?

5 My teachers are Louise and Kerri.

6 Ryan and I are married.

7 The students aren't in class.

8 A: Where are you and Jeff?

B: Jeff and I are in class.



B Complete the conversation.

A: Hi, where / you / from?

B: We / California.

A: you / Los Angeles?

B: No / we / not. We / San Francisco.

A: you / Kathy and Chris?

B: No, / they / in Room 205!

2.2 A Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

my our its her their his your (x 2)

1 A: Hi, ^{my} name's Gina. What's name?

B: Hi, I'm Brad.

2 A: Who's she?

B: Oh, name's Julia.

3 A: And who's the man with Julia?

B: I don't know name.

4 A: It's an American sport.

B: What's name?

A: American football!

5 A: Mr and Mrs Black, what's phone number?

B: phone number's 2048 306 8420473.

6 A: This is a photo of the children.

B: What are names?

A: Jake and Patsy.

B Complete the conversations with the correct subject pronoun (I/you/he, etc.) or correct possessive adjective (my/your/his, etc.).

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me, is ¹ name Black?

B: No, ² isn't. ³ name's Depp.

A: Are ⁴ Johnny Depp, the actor?

B: No, ⁵ 'm not! Please go away!

Conversation 2

A: Where's Angela?

B: ⁶ isn't here.

A: What's ⁷ mobile number?

B: Sorry, I don't know.

Conversation 3

A: Are ⁸ students?

B: Yes, ⁹ are. Are you ¹⁰ teacher?

A: Yes, ¹¹ am.

2.3 A Find and correct the mistakes. There are three mistakes in each conversation.

Conversation 1

A: I'm very tired.

B: OK, ~~let~~ stop now. *let's*

A: That a good idea.

B: And let's a coffee.

A: No, thanks. I'm not thirsty.

Conversation 2

A: I hungry.

B: I too.

A: Let we eat at the pizzeria.

B: Good idea.

GRAMMAR

3.1 *this/that/these/those*

	here ↓	there ↗
singular	this key	that key
plural	these keys	those keys

With *this/that*, use *is*: *This **is** my book. That's your book.*

With *these/those*, use *are*: *These **are** my DVDs. Those **are** your DVDs.*



this



that



these



those

3.2 *possessive 's*

He's	my father's	brother.
They're	my friend's	children.
They're	Rob's	keys.
Is that	Francis's	mobile?
Mariam is	Jalil and Laila's	daughter.
	Catherine's	family name is Hart.

Use 's to show possession.

Use 's with objects: *Rebecca's car, Wei's book.*

Use 's with personal information:

James's email address, Lorenzo's phone number.

Use 's with family: *Eva's parents, Lucy's brother.*

With two people, put the 's after the second person: *That is Carl and Olga's house.*

Note: *Tony's a waiter* = Tony is.

I'm Tony's father = possessive 's.

Use 's after a word ending in s: *I like Boris's coat.*

3.3 *ordering in a café* p36

Ordering			
Can I have	a	tea, mineral water, cake,	please?
	two	coffees, colas, sandwiches,	
How much is that?			

Taking orders
Can I help you?
Anything else?
That's £8.

giving alternatives			response
Still	or	sparkling?	Still, please.
White		brown bread?	Brown, please.
Espresso		cappuccino?	Espresso, please.

PRACTICE

3.1 A Look at the picture and complete the conversation with *this*, *that*, *these* or *those*.A: Excuse me, is ¹*this* your shop?

B: Yes, it is.

A: And is ²_____ your window?B: Yes. Is ³_____ your football?

A: No, it's their football.

B: Are ⁴_____ your children?A: Yes, ⁵_____ 's Jerry and ⁶_____ 's Ed.B Find and correct the mistakes with *this*/*that*/*these*/*those* in the conversations.

Conversation 1

*These*A: *This* are our photos of Thailand.B: Is *this* your hotel?A: Yes, it is, and *this* are our friends, Sanan and Chai.

Conversation 2

A: What's *this* over there?B: It's Red Square. And *this* is your hotel here.

A: Thank you.

Conversation 3

A: What are *those* in English?B: They're 'coins'. *That* one here is a pound coin.

Conversation 4

A: Who are *that* people over there?B: *That's* my brother, Juan and his friends.

Conversation 5

A: Where are *those* students from?

B: They're from Bogotá, in Colombia.

A: And *those* student?

B: She isn't a student. She's our teacher!

3.2 A Write sentences about the family. Use possessive 's.

Jon and Ellen

Mark

Sarah

1 Jon is Ellen's husband.

2 Ellen is _____ mother.

3 Mark is _____ brother.

4 Sarah is _____ sister.

5 Mark is _____ son.

6 Sarah is _____ daughter.

7 Ellen is _____ wife.

8 Jon and Ellen are _____ parents.

B Complete the sentences with possessive 's.

1 He's Matt. This is his computer.

This is Matt's computer.

2 That's Josh. I'm his friend.

I'm _____.

3 She's Emily. Are you her sister?

Are you _____?

4 He's Eric. His family name's White.

Eric _____'s White.

5 They're Bella and David. These are their children.

These are _____ children.

6 This is Rex. His phone number is 396 294.

_____ is 396 294.

3.3 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box. p36

you that's have or one can else

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, can I an egg sandwich, please?

A: White brown bread?

B: Brown, please.

A: Anything?

B: Yes, I have two coffees, please?

A: Espresso or cappuccino?

B: One espresso and cappuccino.

A: OK, six fifty.

4.1 present simple: I/you/we/they p42

Positive and negative			
+	I	work	in an office.
	You	have	two children.
-	We	don't like	egg sandwiches.
	They	do not like	

For the negative, use *don't* + verb: *I don't live here.* *Don't* = *do not*. Use the contraction *don't* in speaking.

Use the present simple to talk about things that are always true.

Questions					Short answers		
?	Do	you/we/they	have	a car?	Yes,	I /we/they	do.
					No,		don't.

For a question, use *do* + subject + verb. *Do you understand?* NOT *understand you?*

In short answers, use *Yes, I do.* *No, I don't.* NOT *Yes, I understand.* *No, I don't understand.*

Wh- questions			
Where			live?
What	do	you	
When			study?

Use a question word (*what, where*) + *do* + subject + verb:
Where do you work?

4.2 present simple: he/she/it

Positive and negative			
+	He	likes	children.
	She	goes	to Mexico.
	It	has	an airport.
-	He	doesn't live	in Barcelona.
	She	does not work	in a bank.
	It	doesn't have	a market.

For the negative, use *doesn't* + verb: *She doesn't like chocolate.*

Doesn't = *does not*. Use the contraction *doesn't* in speaking.

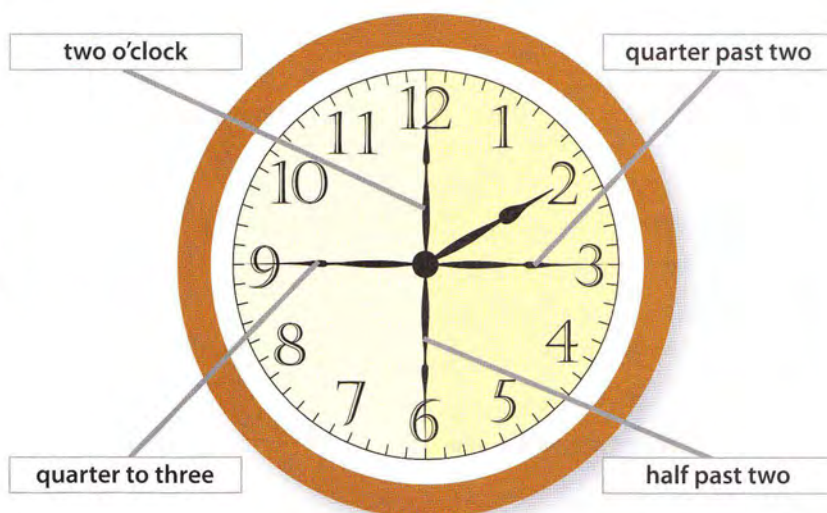
Spelling rules: present simple: he/she/it		
verbs type:	rule	example
	+ -s	work – he works love – she loves
verbs ending in:		
-ch, -o, -s, -sh, -x	+ -es	teach – he teaches do – she does
consonant + -y	y + -ies	study – he studies cry – she cries

Have is irregular: *He has a new computer.*

4.3 telling the time

Asking the time
What time is it?
What time is the film/match/lesson?

Telling the time
It's two o'clock.
The match is at three o'clock.



PRACTICE

4.1 A Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box. p42

read write eat have know drive like live

- 1 I don't read newspapers (-)
- 2 You _____ the colour red. (+)
- 3 They _____ a sister. (-)
- 4 We _____ to work. (-)
- 5 I _____ emails in English. (+)
- 6 We _____ in Rome. (+)
- 7 They _____ a lot of cakes! (+)
- 8 You _____ the answer. (-)

B Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 like / Do / children / you?
Do you like children?
- 2 and / live / you / Jack / together / Do?
- 3 you / in / work / Do / an / office?
- 4 sweater / Do / have / black / you / a?
- 5 Do / Spanish / understand / parents / your?
- 6 work / to / walk / you / Do?

C Complete the short answers for questions 1–6 in Exercise B.

- 1 Yes, I do.
- 2 No, _____.
- 3 Yes, _____.
- 4 No, _____.
- 5 Yes, _____.
- 6 No, _____.

D Write the questions. Use the words in bold to help.

- 1 What do you study? (you)
I study English.
- 2 _____? (you)
We work in Hong Kong.
- 3 _____? (we)
You have a break at **ten**.
- 4 _____? (you)
G-e-o-r-g-e.
- 5 _____? (they)
They like **sport** and TV.

4.2 A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 My mother lives in Paris because she likes cities. (live, like)
- 2 Rudy _____ me but he _____ me every week. (not email, phone)
- 3 My husband _____ to work or he _____. (drive, walk)
- 4 Lana _____ at home but she _____ it. (work, not like)
- 5 Marco _____ four coffees every day because _____ tea. (have, not like)
- 6 Gina _____ English but she _____ it. (understand, not speak)

B Find and correct three mistakes in each conversation.

Conversation 1

A: My wife, Kalila, is a teacher.

B: Near here?

A: Yes, she have a job at City School. She teaches Arabic.

B: Is it a good place to work?

A: Yes, but she don't like the travel every day.

Conversation 2

A: My son Jaime studys engineering at Madrid University.

B: Oh, my daughter gos there. She likes it a lot.

A: Yes, Jaime sais it's good too.

4.3 A Write the times in words.

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____
- 8 _____

1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



5.1 present simple questions: *he/she/it*

Yes/No questions:				
?	Does	he she it	have	a big breakfast?

Short answers		
Yes,	he she it	does.
No,		doesn't.

Use *does* + subject + verb for a question. *Does she cook dinner?* NOT ~~*cooks she dinner?*~~

In short answers, use *Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.* NOT ~~*Yes, she cooks. No, she doesn't cook.*~~

Wh- questions				
?	When	does	he she it	get up?
	What time			have breakfast?
	Where			live?
	What			do?

Use a question word (*what, where, what time, when*) + *does* + subject + verb: *When does she eat?*

5.2 adverbs of frequency

Positive and negative				
+	I/You/We	always usually often	work	on Sundays.
	He/She	sometimes never	has	a coffee.
-	I/You/We	don't usually	cook	breakfast.
	He/She	doesn't often	have	

Adverbs of frequency go **before** most verbs.
I sometimes write emails in English.

Adverbs of frequency with <i>be</i>				
+	I	'm	always	hungry.
	It	's	usually	here.
-	She	isn't	often	

Adverbs of frequency go **after** the verb *be*. *I'm often tired.*
Use adverbs of frequency to say how often we do activities.
I always do my homework. He doesn't often play tennis.

never	not often	sometimes	often	usually	always
0%	10%	40%	60%	80%	100%

5.3 asking for information

Questions			
What time	does	the tour	leave?
When		the café	open?
	is	lunch?	
How much	does	it	cost?
	is	it?	

Responses	
It opens	at nine. from 6a.m. to 10p.m. every day except Monday.
It closes	at two o'clock.
It leaves	at half past nine.
It costs	twenty euros.
It's	

PRACTICE

5.1

A Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 live / Does / here / Patrizia?
Does Patrizia live here?
- 2 Chinese / Stefan / Does / speak?
- 3 Katia / Does / children / have?
- 4 your / like / job / brother / his / Does?
- 5 a / cat / have / Does / name / your?
- 6 word / this / Does / mean / 'very big'?

B Complete the answers with *does* or *doesn't*.

- a) Yes, she does. A son and a daughter.
- b) Yes, she . In flat five.
- c) No, it . It means 'very good'.
- d) Yes, he , but he works from eight to seven.
- e) No, he , but he speaks Japanese.
- f) Yes, it . Its name is Fluffy.

C Match questions 1–6 with answers a)–f).

1b)

D Complete the questions. Use the words in brackets.

Conversation 1

A: Where ¹does your brother live? (your brother)

B: He lives in Copenhagen.

A: Where ² ? (he)

B: He works in a school.

Conversation 2

A: What time ³ ? (Cristina)

B: She gets home at half past four.

A: And when ⁴ ? (she)

B: She has dinner at six o'clock.

Conversation 3

A: What ⁵ ? ('late')

B: It means after the correct time.

A: Oh. And what time ⁶ ?
(the lesson)

B: It starts at 9a.m.

5.2

A Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 I do sport. (never)
I never do sport.
- 2 My mother phones me on Monday evenings. (usually)
- 3 He's tired in the mornings. (often)
- 4 We have a drink after work on Fridays. (always)
- 5 Do you walk to work? (usually)
- 6 I'm at home in the afternoons. (not usually)
- 7 Classes are on Saturdays. (sometimes)
- 8 I watch TV. (not often)

B Look at the chart and complete the conversation. Use adverbs of frequency.

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun
vegetables							
fruit							✓
chicken	✓		✓		✓	✓	
steak	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
fish		✓		✓			
chips	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓

A: So, Mr Price, let's look at your diet. Do you eat vegetables and fruit?

B: Er, no, doctor. I never eat vegetables and I fruit.

A: What about meat and fish?

B: Well, I fish, maybe once or twice a week and I chicken. I like steak so I steak for lunch and I it with chips.

5.3

A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

me do to it does what opens except

A: Excuse me?

B: Can I help you?

A: Yes, time is dinner?

B: From seven half past ten.

A: And you have a swimming pool?

B: Yes, it opens every day Sunday.

A: When does open?

B: It at seven in the morning.

A: When it close?

B: I closes at nine in the evening.

GRAMMAR

6.1 there is/are

Positive and negative					
+	There	's	a restaurant	in the station.	
		is	a snack bar		
-	There	are	payphones	here.	near here. over there.
		isn't	a hotel		
		aren't	any cafés		

Questions			Short answers		
Is	there	a cash machine here?	Yes,	there	is.
			No,		isn't.
Are	there	any shops in the station?	Yes	there	are.
			No,		aren't.

There's a pharmacy.



Is there a pharmacy?

Use short answers to yes/no questions: *Is there a café?* Yes, *there is?* NOT *Yes, there is a café.*

Use *Is there a/an + noun* / *Are + there + (any) + plural noun* for yes/no questions.

With plural nouns, use *any* in the question form and the negative.

Are there any shops? *There aren't any shops.*

Use *there's (there is)* and *there are* to say something exists.

Use *there's (there is)* and *there are* to talk about places, and things or people in places.

6.2 a/an, some, a lot of, not any



a/an



some



a lot of



not any

Use *a/an + singular noun* for one thing or person. Use *a* before consonants (*b, c, d, f*, etc.) and *an* before vowels (*a, e, i, o, u*).

There's a problem. Can I have an egg sandwich?

Use *some + plural noun* for a small number of things or people.

I have some stamps in my bag.

Use *a lot of + plural noun* for a large number of things or people.

Are there a lot of students in your class?

Use *not any + plural noun* for zero (0).

I don't have any bananas.

There aren't any buses.

Also use *no + noun* for zero.

I have no bananas. There are no buses.

6.3 buying a ticket

Asking for a ticket	
A single	to Cairo, please.
A return	
Two singles	to Paris for tomorrow, please.
A monthly pass	to Victoria Station, please.

Asking for information		
What time	's	the next bus?
When	is	
	does it arrive	in Dublin?

Giving information		
What time	do you want	to go?
When		to come back?
There's	a bus one	at half past four.
The train	leaves from	platform 2.
The bus		gate 21.

PRACTICE

6.1 A Look at the picture and read the sentences. Write sentences beginning with *There's*, *There are*, *There isn't* or *There aren't*.

- 1 There's a book, so I think the woman likes reading.
 2 _____, so I think she likes the cinema.
 3 _____, so she works in a bank.
 4 _____, so she doesn't have a car.
 5 _____, so she's married.
 6 _____, so she doesn't have good eyes.
 7 _____, so she likes cats.
 8 _____, so maybe she doesn't have any children.



B Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

~~Is there~~ aren't there (x 2) are (x 3)
 there's isn't Are is (x 2)

Conversation 1

A: 1 Is there a wallet on the table?

B: No, there 2 _____, but 3 _____ a bag.

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me, 4 _____ 5 _____ any toilets near here?

B: Yes, there 6 _____ men's and women's toilets over there.

Conversation 3

A: 7 _____ there any night buses?

B: No, there 8 _____, but there 9 _____ taxis.

Conversation 4

A: Excuse me, 10 _____ 11 _____ a doctor here?

B: Yes, there 12 _____. Dr Mantel!

6.2 A Look at the picture and complete the sentences with *There's/are* and *a/an, some, a lot of* or *n't (not) any*.

- 1 _____ There's a phone.
 2 _____ photos.
 3 _____ computer.
 4 _____ apple.
 5 _____ pens.
 6 _____ keys.

B Put the words in order to make sentences.

- 1 have / lot / money / Students / a / of / don't
 2 a / pages / has / lot / book / A / usually / of
 3 have / Some / don't / people / home / a
 4 any / but / sister / Ben / have / has / brothers / he / doesn't / a
 5 of / Our / has / lot / students / school / a
 6 a / of / Some / have / lot / children / people



6.3 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

singles a 's do it tomorrow

singles

A: Two 1 to Glasgow, please.

B: For today?

A: Sorry, no, for.

B: When you want to go?

A: At about nine o'clock in the morning.

B: OK, that's seven pounds fifty.

A: What time the bus?

B: There's one at quarter to nine.

A: When does arrive in Glasgow?

B: At half past nine.

A: Thanks lot.

GRAMMAR

7.1 past simple: was/were

Positive and negative				
+	I/He/She/It	was	here at work tired	yesterday. on Friday. this morning.
	You/We/They	were		
-	I/He/She/It	wasn't		
	You/We/They	weren't		

The past simple of *be* is *was/were*. Use *was/were* to talk about the past.

Add *n't* (*not*) for the negative: *wasn't* = *was not*, *weren't* = *were not*.

Use contractions in speaking: *I wasn't here yesterday*.

Wh- questions with was/were		
Where	was	your party?
When	were	the last Olympic Games?

Use *Wh-* question words + *was/were* + subject to ask questions in the past.

What was the problem?

Questions				Short answers		
?	Was	I/he/ she/it	OK? right?	Yes,	I/he/ she/it	was.
				No,	she/it	wasn't.
	Were	you/ we/they	here	Yes	you/we/ they	were.
				No,	they	weren't.

Use *was/were* + subject (*I, you*) for questions.

She was in Spain.

Was she in Spain?

You were at school together. Were you at school together?

Use short answers to *yes/no* questions:

Was it good? Yes, it was. NOT Yes, it was good.

7.2 past simple: regular verbs

Positive and negative			
+	I/You/ He/She/It/ We/They	worked	yesterday.
		closed	at four.
		cried	all night.
		stopped	last week.
-		didn't wait.	
		did not start.	

Spellings: regular past simple verbs		
types of verb	rule	example
verbs ending in:		
	+ <i>-ed</i>	work – worked
-e	+ <i>-d</i>	close – closed
consonant + <i>-y</i>	<i>y</i> + <i>-ied</i>	cry – cried
consonant-vowel-consonant	double the final consonant + <i>-ed</i>	stop – stopped

Note: opened, listened NOT *openned, listenned*

The past simple is the same for *I/You/He/She/It/We/They*.

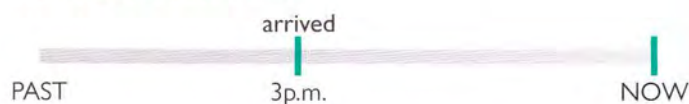
In the negative, use *didn't* + verb. *I didn't dance.* NOT *I didn't danced.*

Use the contraction *didn't* in speaking.

Use the past simple to talk about:

- something which happened at a point in the past.

We arrived at three o'clock.



- something which started and finished in the past.

We played tennis for three hours.



7.3 giving opinions

Asking for opinions		
How	is	the food?
	was	the party?

Giving opinions		
It	is/was	delicious. lovely. great. fantastic. good. boring.
They	're/were	
It	wasn't	very good.

Use *I think* with opinions: *I think it's very good.*

PRACTICE

7.1 A Complete the sentences with the correct form of *be* in the present or the past.

- I 'm (+) here now but I wasn't (-) here yesterday.
- He _____ (-) at home today, but he _____ (+) at home yesterday.
- The shops _____ (-) open yesterday, but they _____ (+) open today.
- We _____ (+) all tired yesterday, but we _____ (-) tired today.
- She _____ (-) at work yesterday, but she _____ (+) at work today.
- You _____ (+) relaxed today, but you _____ (-) relaxed yesterday.

B Complete the questions about the past and write the short answers.

- James / here / this morning? **X**
Was James here this morning? No, he wasn't.
- the film / good? **✓**
_____?
- your brothers and sisters / nice to you? **✓**
_____?
- you / cold / in Scotland? **X**
_____?
- you and Emma / at the party? **X**
_____?
- there / a gift shop / in the hotel? **✓**
_____?

7.2 A Write the sentences in the past simple with the words in brackets.

- The shop opens at ten. (Yesterday / nine)
Yesterday the shop opened at nine.
- My father plays golf at the weekend. (Last weekend / tennis)

- Francisco works in a bank. (Last year / shop)

- The baby cries a lot. (Last night / all night)

- My parents often move home. (In 2009 / to Barcelona)

- The train stops for a quarter of an hour. (Yesterday / half an hour)

B Complete the sentences with the correct form of the past simple.

- In 2010 / we / live / in London, but / we / not / like / it.
In 2010 we lived in London, but we didn't like it.
- I / not / watch / TV last night. I study / for three hours.
- Noriko / email / me yesterday, but she / not / phone.
- The film / not / start / until eight, and / it / finish / at eleven.
- James / want / to see the concert, but he / arrive / an hour late.
- I / repeat / the instructions because / the students / not / understand.

7.3 A Find and correct the mistakes. There are three mistakes in each conversation.

Conversation 1

How

A: Hi, Sally. ~~Who~~ was the film?

B: It was delicious, really great.

A: Who was in it?

B: Tom Hanks.

A: How is he?

B: He was fantastic.

Conversation 2

A: Who's the chicken?

B: It's very good – really awful.

A: Oh, I'm sorry.

B: How about your steak?

A: I'm think it's OK.

B: And this restaurant is very expensive.

A: Yes, it is!

GRAMMAR

8.1 past simple: irregular verbs

+	I/You/We/They/ He/She/It	went	camping.
		had	a good time.
		met	a lot of people.
-	I/You/We/They/ He/She/It	didn't	go on holiday.
		didn't	have breakfast.
		didn't	met our friends.

Many common verbs have an irregular past simple form.

The negative form is the same for regular and irregular verbs.

I didn't go camping. NOT ~~I didn't went camping.~~

He didn't have a good time. NOT ~~He didn't had a good time.~~

8.2 past simple: questions

Yes/No questions					Short answers		
?	Did	I/you/he/she/it/ we/they	start	in New York?	Yes,	I/you/he/she/it/ we/they	did.
			go	to Paris?	No,		didn't.

Use *Did* + subject + verb for a question. *Did you start?* NOT ~~*Did you started?*~~ ~~*Did you went?*~~

The question form is the same for regular and irregular verbs.

In short answers, use *Yes, I did/No, I didn't*. NOT ~~*Yes, I started.*~~ ~~*No, I didn't go.*~~

Wh- questions			
When	did	you	go?
Where			
Why			
How			
What	did	you	do?
Who	did	you	meet?

The question word is before *did*.

8.3 giving directions

Asking for directions		
Excuse me,	where's	the fruit?
	where are	the DVDs?
	is there	a post office near here?

Giving directions		
Do you see	the vegetables? the shop over there?	
The fruit	is	next to the vegetables.
The DVDs	are	opposite the magazines. on the right. near the yoghurts.
There	's	a post office over there.

To check instructions, use: *Let me check* or *Can I check?*

PRACTICE

8.1 A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in bold.

- 1 They didn't **come** to class on Monday but they came on Tuesday.
- 2 He **took** a taxi, he didn't _____ a bus.
- 3 You **said** hello, but you didn't _____ your name.
- 4 She didn't **think** the film was good but he _____ it was great.
- 5 I didn't **become** a nurse, I _____ a doctor.
- 6 We didn't **sit** here, we _____ over there.

B Complete the story with the past form of the verbs in the box.

meet break drive go have (x 2) give see
become not have eat

I ¹ met my wife Manuela one weekend on a mountain in Scotland. On that Saturday morning the weather was good and I ² _____ out at eight o'clock. But around two o'clock the weather ³ _____ very bad. At five o'clock I was lost, cold, very hungry and scared. Then I ⁴ _____ someone on the mountain. It was Manuela. She ⁵ _____ any food but she ⁶ _____ some chocolate and some water. She ⁷ _____ the chocolate in two and ⁸ _____ me half. We ⁹ _____ the chocolate and talked. Then she helped me down the mountain. She ¹⁰ _____ a car and she ¹¹ _____ me back to my hotel. I asked her to dinner and that was the beginning of our story.

8.2 A Complete the conversations with the past form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 A: Did you leave home at six in the morning? (leave)
B: Yes, we did. But the plane left at six in the evening!
- 2 A: _____ you _____ David at school? (meet)
B: No, I _____. We _____ last year at work.
- 3 A: _____ you _____ at the party? (dance)
B: Yes, I _____. I _____ with Sally, and Anne, and Julia.
- 4 A: _____ you _____ Mike yesterday afternoon? (see)
B: No, I _____, but I _____ him in the morning.
- 5 A: _____ you _____ this email? (write)
B: Yes, I _____. I _____ it yesterday. Is there a problem?
- 6 A: _____ you _____ a good time in Uruguay? (have)
B: Yes, we _____. We _____ a fantastic time, thanks.

B Write questions about the underlined information.

- 1 I met an old friend.
Who did you meet?
- 2 We went to a restaurant.

- 3 We ate pizza.

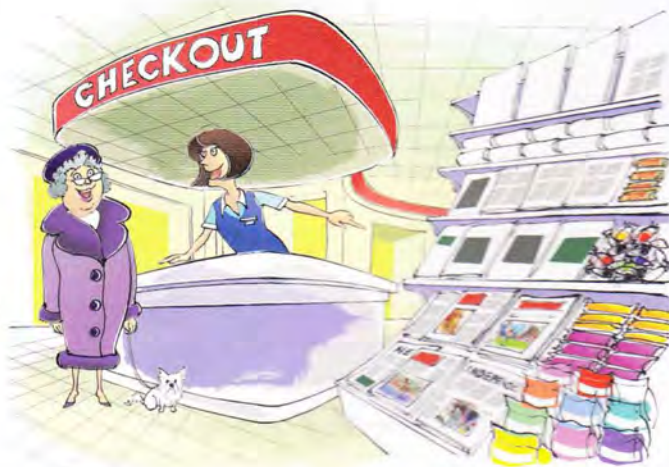
- 4 We drank mineral water.

- 5 We saw a film.

- 6 I came home at midnight.

8.3 A Find and correct the mistakes in the conversation. There are six mistakes.

- are
- A: Excuse me, where is the sweets?
 - B: Are you see the newspapers over there?
 - A: Where?
 - B: Over there, near of the snacks.
 - A: Oh, yes.
 - B: Well, the sweets are next the newspapers, on the right.
 - A: Can I check? They're the left of the newspapers.
 - B: No, they're on right.
 - A: Ah, yes. Thanks a lot.
 - B: No problem.



GRAMMAR

9.1 like, love, hate + -ing

Positive and negative			
+	I/You/We/They	like/love/hate	cats.
	He/She/It	likes/loves/hates	computer games.
-	I/You/We/They	don't like	going to parties.
	He/She/It	doesn't like	doing nothing.

Be careful with the short answers:

Do you like playing tennis? Yes I do. NOT Yes, I like.

No, I don't. NOT No, I don't like.

To talk about your feelings:

- use *love/(don't) like/hate* + plural noun.
- use *love/(don't) like/hate* + verb + -ing.

Spellings: -ing forms		
type of verb	rule	example
most verbs	+ -ing	go – going study – studying
verbs ending in:		
-e	e + -ing	phone – phoning drive – driving
consonant-vowel-consonant	double the final consonant + -ing	get – getting sit – sitting

9.2 object pronouns

subject pronouns	object pronouns
I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it
we	us
they	them

Don't repeat nouns and noun phrases. Use a pronoun:

*Megan's brother is a doctor and I like Megan's brother **him** very much.*

A: *Do you know Amelia?*

B: *No, I don't know Amelia **her**.*

After prepositions, use nouns or object pronouns.

*Listen **to** the teacher/**to** me.*

*I went to the cinema **with** friends/**with** them.*

Subject pronouns go **before** the verb.

Object pronouns go **after** the verb.

*Karen loves cats but I hate **them**.*

9.3 making requests

I/He/She etc.	'd like would like	two coffees, please. a new computer.
---------------	-----------------------	---

Would like is polite.

Use *would like* + noun = I want.

Note: *I'd like a banana* = I want a banana now.

I like bananas = I always like bananas.

question					response
	Would	you	like	a drink?	Yes, please. No, thanks/thank you.
What Which one	would	you	like?		I'd like a cola, please.

For questions, use *Would + you + like* (+ noun)?

Or use *Wh-* question word + *would + you + like*?

For the answer, use: *Would you like (a sandwich)?* with Yes, please. or No, thanks/ thank you.

PRACTICE

9.1 A Write the *-ing* form of the verbs.

- 1 be being
- 2 chat _____
- 3 work _____
- 4 write _____
- 5 say _____
- 6 have _____
- 7 start _____
- 8 stop _____
- 9 cook _____
- 10 email _____

B Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

A: you / like / do / sport? *Do you like doing sport?*

B: Well, / like / swim / but I / not / like / run.

A: you / like / play / tennis?

B: Yes, / I.

Conversation 2

A: Sam / not / like / speak / on the phone.

B: he / like / write / emails?

A: No, he / but / he / love / meet / people / online.

B: And / he / like / play / computer games?

A: Yes, / he.

9.2 A Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences. There are mistakes in eight of the sentences.

- 1 Leo and Irena were here yesterday. I had lunch with her. *them*
- 2 That's your sister's toy. Give it to him.
- 3 Deena lived with we for three years.
- 4 I love this music. Come and dance with I.
- 5 I spoke to Muhammed last night and asked him about it.
- 6 These apples aren't very good. I don't like these.
- 7 When did I first talk to you?
- 8 Andy's good at tennis. I played with he yesterday.
- 9 Diana's in my class. I like she a lot.
- 10 The exit is over there, in front of your.

B Look at the conversations. Complete B's part with an object pronoun.

1 A: Did you see John yesterday?

B: Yes I saw *him* at lunch.

2 A: How was the chicken?

B: I didn't like.

3 A: Do you have the tickets?

B: Oh, no! I put in my other coat.

4 A: You're very late!

B: Sorry, I sent you a text. Did you get?

5 A: Where's Alex?

B: He phoned this morning from home. He isn't well.

6 A: Was Jennifer at the party?

B: No, I asked but she didn't want to go.

7 A: How did you and Al get to your hotel?

B: A taxi met at the airport.

8 A: Thank you Mr Abasi.

B: Wait a minute, class. Did I give your homework?

9.3 A Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

Can like Do thanks I'd have Would 'd

Conversation 1

A: ¹ Can I help you?B: Yes, please. I ² _____ like one of those shirts.B: OK. Which colour would you ³ _____?A: Um ... Can I ⁴ _____ the red one, please?

Conversation 2

A: ⁵ _____ you like something to drink?B: Er ... Yes, ⁶ _____ like a tea please.A: ⁷ _____ you take sugar?B: No, ⁸ _____.

10.1 can/can't

Positive and negative			
+	I/You/He/She/It/We/They	can	swim.
-		can't	play tennis.

Questions			Short answers		
Can	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	drive?	Yes,	I/he/she/it/we/they	can.
		cook Mexican food?	No,		can't.

Use *can/can't* + verb. *I can dance.* NOT ~~*I can to dance.*~~

Use short answers to *yes/no* questions: *Can you sing?* Yes, *I can.* / No, *I can't.*

NOT ~~*Yes, I can swim.*~~ / ~~*No, I can't swim.*~~

Use *can* + subject (*you, he*) for questions.

He can play tennis. Can he play tennis?

Use *can* or *can't* to talk about ability. You know how to do something.

Use *very well, well, quite well, not very well* with *can*.

I can speak English very well. (✓✓✓)

I can sing well. (✓✓)

I can cook quite well. (✓)

I can speak English, but not very well. (X)

10.2 be going to

Positive and negative				
+	I	'm	going to	get fit.
	He/She/It	's		
	You/We/They	're		
-	I	'm not	going to	lose weight
	He/She/It	isn't		
	You/We/They	aren't		

Use *be going to* + verb to talk about future plans.

Yes, I'm going to lose weight.
But not today!



10.3 starting and ending conversations

Starting conversations

Hi, how are you?
This is a great/nice place.
Excuse me, do you have the time?
What do you think of the music/food/party?
So are you from around here?
So, where are you going?*

*Use this when you meet someone on a bus, train, plane, etc.

Ending conversations

Is that the time?
I'm sorry, I have a lesson at two.
Oh look, this is my station.
I'm sorry. I can see an old friend over there.
Nice to talk to you/meet you.
I hope we meet again.

PRACTICE

10.1 A Complete the sentences with the verb in brackets and the correct form of *can*.

- Help, help! I can't swim! (swim)
- Excuse me, _____ English? (speak)
- Martin _____ a horse, but not very well. (ride)
- I'm sorry. I _____ your name. (remember)
- Rita _____ very good photos so let's ask her. (take)
- These words are very small. _____ them for me? (read)
- I _____ the game of chess. (never understand)
- I don't have my glasses with me so I _____ very well. (see)

B Complete the conversation with *can* (x 5) and *can't* (x 4).

- Can*
- A: Are you OK? Can you stand up?
- B: Let me try. Yes, I.
- A: you walk on it?
- B: I don't know. Oh no, I.
- A: OK, just sit down and relax.
- B: I relax! Where's my mobile?
- A: I see it. You use my mobile.
- B: It's no good.
- A: What's the problem?
- B: I get a phone signal here. you go and get help?
- A: Yes, no problem. Don't move!

10.2 A Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences 1–8. There are mistakes in six of the sentences.

- I ^{am} going to see Juan this afternoon.
- Charlotte's going be a writer.
- I are going to stay at home tomorrow.
- We aren't going to arrive before seven o'clock.
- Antonio going to leave work at five.
- I not going to pay!
- Kiera and Sam is going to drive to Chicago.
- My daughter isn't going to sell her flat.

B Complete the conversation with the words in the box. You do not need to use one of the words.

'm not buy 're go to 's he going

- A: I 'm going to get up early tomorrow and go running. Do you want to come?
- B: No, I'm going ² _____ stay up late tonight, so I'm ³ _____ going to get up early tomorrow.
- A: Oh, is there something good on TV?
- B: No, it's my father's fiftieth birthday and ⁴ _____'s going to have a party.
- A: Oh, that's right. You ⁵ _____ going to give him a new mobile phone.
- B: No, I'm going to ⁶ _____ him a GPS for his car. Do you want to come and help me choose one?
- A: Sorry, I can't. Celia's here. She ⁷ _____ going to help me with my computer.
- B: OK. I'm ⁸ _____ to go to the shop now. See you later.

10.3 A Put the words in bold in the correct order.

Conversation 1

- A: Excuse me, ¹ **the / you / time / do / have?** *Do you have the time?*
- B: Yes, it's half past eight.
- A: ² **nice / is / place / a / This.**
- B: It's OK. ³ **you / What / of / music / do / think / the?**
- A: It's great.

Conversation 2

- A: I'm sorry, ⁴ **old / there / friend / can / see / an / over / I.**
- B: Oh, right.
- A: ⁵ **you / talk / to / Nice / to.**
- B: ⁶ **too / talk / to / Good / you / to.**

Conversation 3

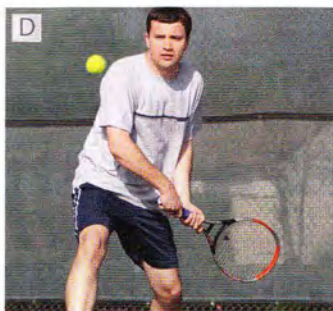
- A: ⁷ **that / time / Is / the?** Oh, no!
- B: What's the problem?
- A: ⁸ **minutes / meeting / in / ten / a / have / I.**
- B: OK. Goodbye.
- A: Bye.

PHOTO BANK

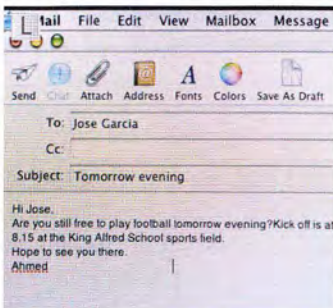
INTERNATIONAL ENGLISH

1A Match the words with photos A–N.

- 1 bank
- 2 camera
- 3 cinema
- 4 computer
- 5 email
- 6 information
- 7 internet
- 8 pizza
- 9 restaurant
- 10 supermarket
- 11 taxi
- 12 television/TV
- 13 tennis
- 14 university



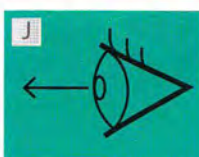
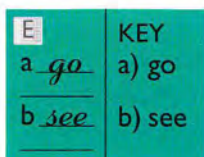
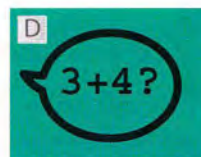
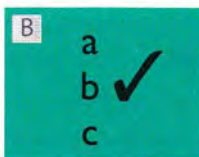
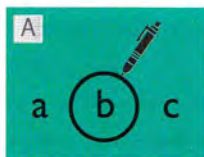
B Are the words the same in your language?



CLASSROOM LANGUAGE

1 Match the verbs with pictures A–L.

- 1 answer
- 2 ask
- 3 listen
- 4 read
- 5 write
- 6 look
- 7 circle
- 8 tick
- 9 underline
- 10 work alone
- 11 work in pairs
- 12 check your answers



COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

1A Match the countries with the flags.

- 1 Canada A
- 2 Egypt
- 3 France
- 4 Germany
- 5 Greece
- 6 India
- 7 Mexico
- 8 New Zealand
- 9 Portugal
- 10 Scotland
- 11 South Korea
- 12 Venezuela



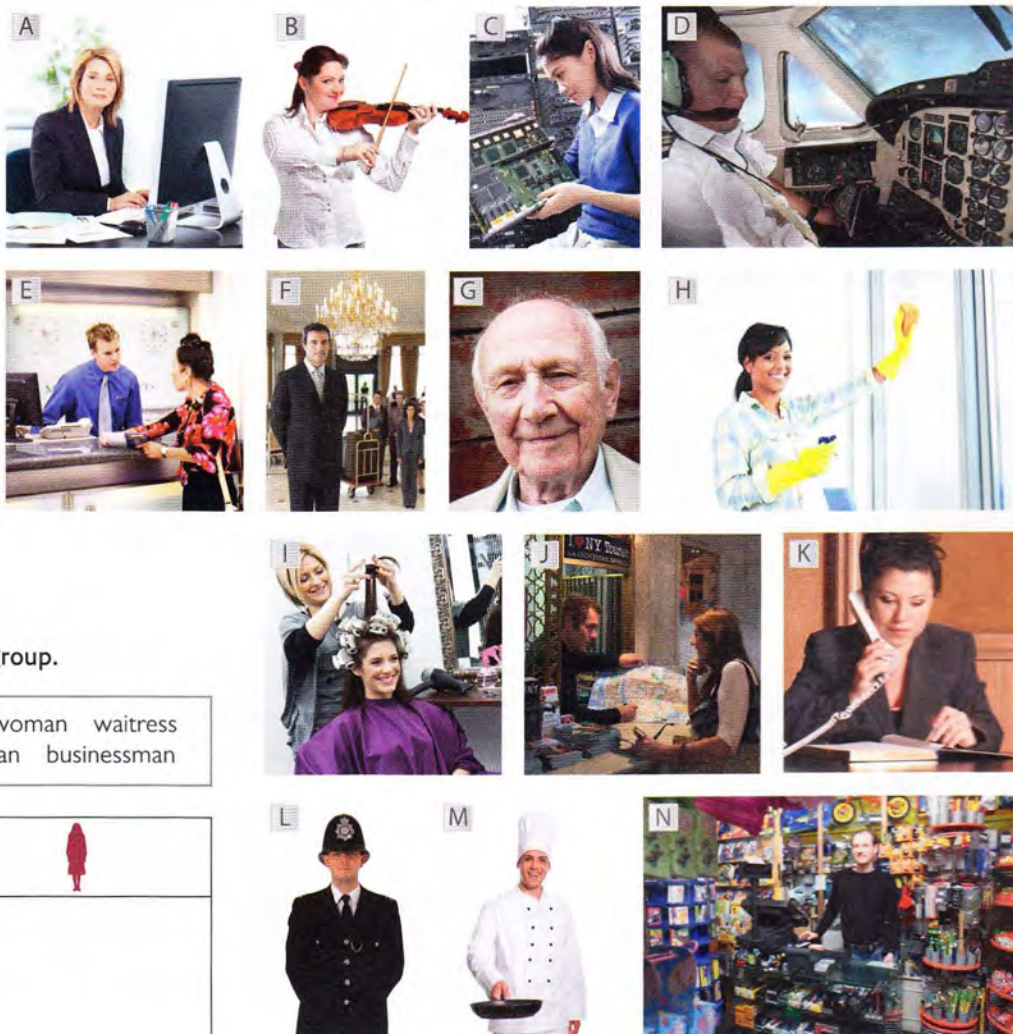
B Complete the table with the correct countries.

Nationality	Country	Nationality	Country
-an/-ian		-ese	
1 American		17 Chinese	
2 Argentinian		18 Japanese	
3 Australian		19 Portuguese	
4 Brazilian		-ish	
5 Canadian		20 English	
6 Egyptian		21 Irish	
7 German		22 Polish	
8 Hungarian		23 Scottish	
9 Indian		24 Spanish	
10 Italian		other	
11 Korean		25 French	
12 Mexican		26 Greek	
13 Russian		27 New Zealander	
14 Saudi Arabian			
15 South African			
16 Venezuelan			

JOBS

1A Match the jobs with photos A–N.

- 1 cleaner
- 2 cook/chef
- 3 hairdresser
- 4 hotel manager
- 5 IT worker
- 6 musician
- 7 office worker A
- 8 personal assistant
- 9 pilot
- 10 police officer
- 11 receptionist
- 12 retired
- 13 shop assistant
- 14 tourist information assistant



B Put the jobs in the correct group.

sportsman actor businesswoman waitress
actress waiter sportswoman businessman

sportsman	



PHOTO BANK

FEELINGS

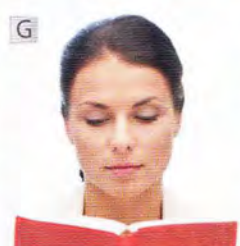
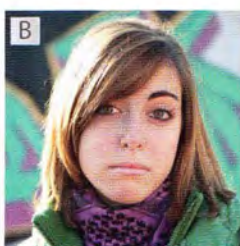
p24

1A Match the adjectives with photos A–H.

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 angry | 5 scared/afraid |
| 2 happy | 6 surprised |
| 3 ill | 7 unhappy |
| 4 interested | 8 well/fine |

B Are the adjectives good (+) or bad (–)? Complete the table.

+	–
happy	



OBJECTS

1A Match the names of the objects with photos A–L.

- bag
- credit card
- cup
- diary
- dictionary
- glass
- mouse
- newspaper
- notebook
- pencil
- table
- watch



B Work in pairs. Which objects are in the classroom?

2A Write the plurals of the words in Exercise 1A in the correct place.

most words	+ -s	key – keys	pens
after -x, -ss, -sh, -ch	+ -es	box – boxes	
after consonant + -y	y + ies	city – cities	



B Write the words in the box under the photos.

boy man children girls
boys woman girl men child
women



CLOTHES AND COLOURS

1 Match the names of the clothes with photos A–S.

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|-------------|
| 1 boots | 8 jacket | 15 sweater |
| 2 coat | 9 jeans | 16 tie |
| 3 dress | 10 shirt | 17 trainers |
| 4 glasses | 11 shoes | 18 trousers |
| 5 gloves | 12 skirt | 19 T-shirt |
| 6 handbag | 13 socks | |
| 7 hat | 14 suit | |



2 Write words 1–10 under the colours.

- 1 black
- 2 blue
- 3 brown
- 4 green
- 5 orange
- 6 pink
- 7 purple
- 8 red
- 9 white
- 10 yellow



A _____



B _____



C _____



D _____



E _____



F _____



G _____



H _____



I _____



J _____

PHOTO BANK

VERB PHRASES

1A Write verbs 1–8 under the photos.

- 1 be
- 2 cost
- 3 listen
- 4 play
- 5 read
- 6 write
- 7 watch
- 8 want



A be a teacher



B read a newspaper



C listen to music



D play guitar



E cost ten euros



F watch TV

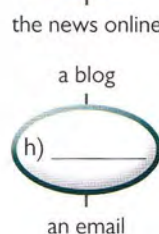
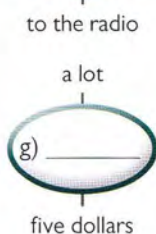
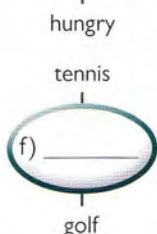
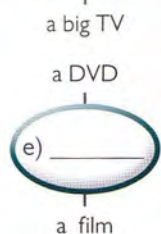
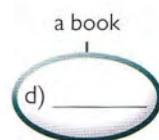
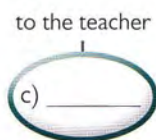
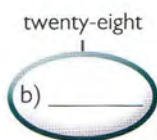
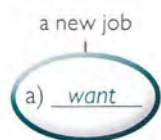


G write an email



H want a car

B Complete the word webs with a verb from 1–8 in Exercise 1A.



TIMES

1 Write the times under the photos.



A 8:05



B 10:10



C 3:25



D 1:50



E 21:35



F 12:00



G 1:00

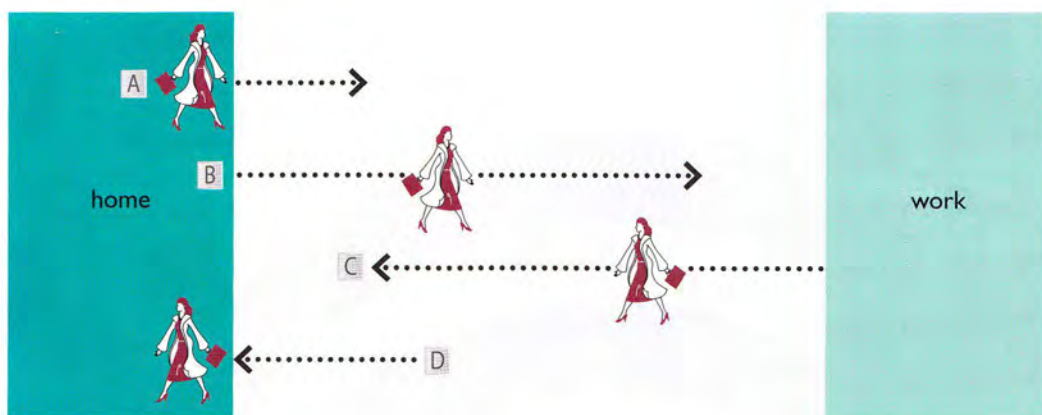


H 11:55

DAILY ROUTINES: MOVEMENT VERBS

1 Match phrases 1–4 with pictures A–D.

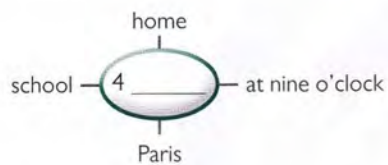
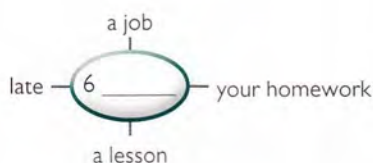
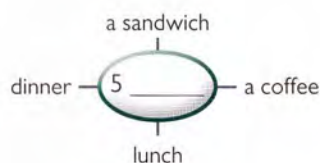
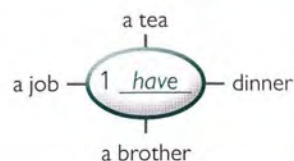
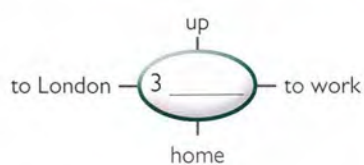
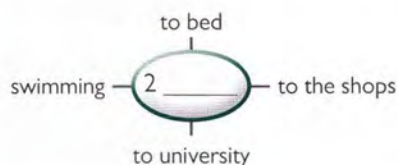
- 1 get home
- 2 go to work
- 3 come home
- 4 leave home



DAILY ROUTINES: VERB PHRASES

1A Complete the word webs with a verb in the box.

have go make get leave start/finish



B Work in pairs and take turns.
Cover the word webs. Student A:
say a verb from the box. Student
B: say three verb phrases.

FOOD

1 Match the names of the food with photos A–U.

- 1 apples
- 2 bananas
- 3 beans
- 4 beef
- 5 biscuits
- 6 carrots
- 7 crisps
- 8 custard
- 9 grapes
- 10 ice cream
- 11 lamb
- 12 milk
- 13 noodles
- 14 nuts
- 15 pasta
- 16 peas
- 17 potatoes
- 18 rice
- 19 sausages
- 20 tomatoes
- 21 yoghurt

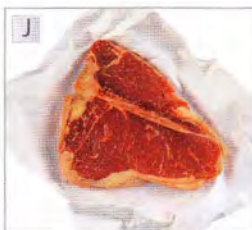
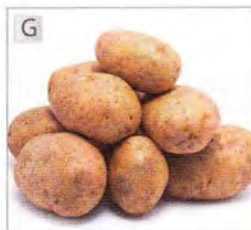
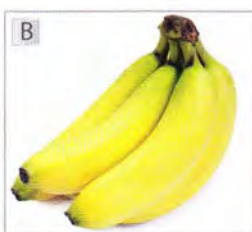
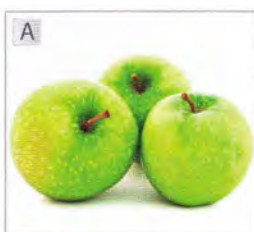
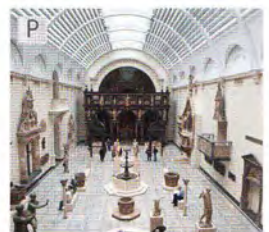
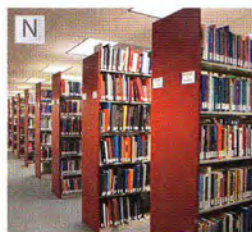
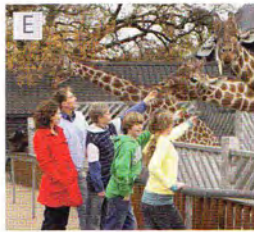


PHOTO BANK

PLACES

1 Match the places with photos A–P.

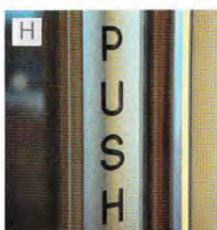
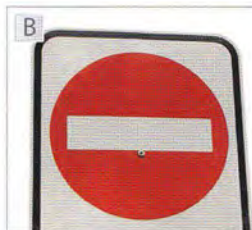
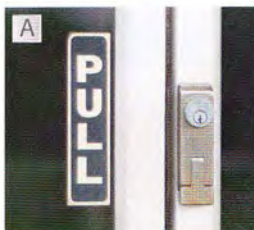
- 1 airport
- 2 bank
- 3 cinema
- 4 factory
- 5 farm
- 6 gym
- 7 hospital
- 8 library
- 9 museum
- 10 park
- 11 post office
- 12 school
- 13 shopping centre
- 14 supermarket
- 15 theatre
- 16 zoo



PLACES: SIGNS

1 Match the signs with photos A–J.

- 1 danger – keep out
- 2 entrance
- 3 fire exit
- 4 look both ways
- 5 no entry
- 6 no smoking
- 7 pull
- 8 push
- 9 toilets (Ladies, Gentlemen)
- 10 way out / exit



DATES: YEARS

1 Match 1–8 with A–H.

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 nineteen eighty-four | 5 two thousand and eight |
| 2 two thousand and one | 6 eighteen fifty |
| 3 nineteen ninety-nine | 7 nineteen forty-five |
| 4 sixteen twenty-three | 8 twenty twenty |

- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| A 2001 | B 1945 | C 1623 |
| D 2008 | E 1984 | F 2020 |
| G 1850 | H 1999 | |

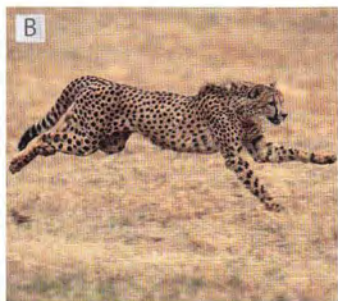
DATES: TIME PHRASES

1 Match the time phrases with the days/dates/times.



- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 last month | a) Saturday June 9 – Sunday June 10 |
| 2 last night | b) Thursday June 14, 6a.m.–12 noon |
| 3 last week | c) Thursday June 14, 10p.m.–6a.m. |
| 4 last weekend | d) Thursday June 14, 6p.m.–10p.m. |
| 5 last year | e) May |
| 6 yesterday morning | f) Tuesday June 12, 1p.m.–6p.m. |
| 7 yesterday evening | g) Monday June 4 – Sunday June 9 |
| 8 on Tuesday afternoon | h) 2011 |

ADJECTIVES



1A Match the adjectives with photos A–I.

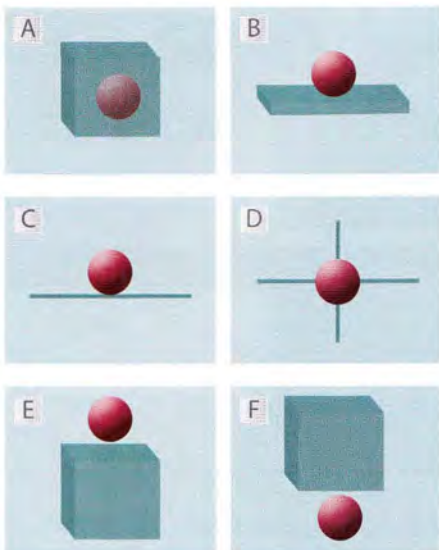
- 1 far E _____
- 2 soft _____
- 3 heavy _____
- 4 dark _____
- 5 long _____
- 6 full _____
- 7 expensive _____
- 8 noisy _____
- 9 fast _____

B Write the words in the box next to the opposites above.

short	near
light (x2)	quiet
slow	cheap
hard	empty

PHOTO BANK

PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE



1A Match the prepositions in the box with pictures A–F.

in under at on (x 2) over

B Correct the sentences about photos 1–6.



- 1 The cat's over the table.
- 2 There's a man in a car.
- 3 There's a plane at the sea.
- 4 There are two elephants over a river.
- 5 I live on number sixty-six.
- 6 Rome is in the River Tiber.

THE WEATHER

1A Match the weather in 1–6 with photos A–F.

- 1 It was hot and sunny.
- 2 It was cold. F
- 3 It was cloudy.
- 4 It was windy.
- 5 It rained.
- 6 It snowed.

B Write answers to the questions.

How was the weather:

- 1 yesterday?
- 2 last weekend?
- 3 on your last holiday?
- 4 on your last birthday?



GIFTS

1A Match the gifts with photos A–O.

- 1 a bath set
- 2 a candle
- 3 a coffee machine
- 4 a cookbook
- 5 flowers
- 6 a gift certificate
- 7 jewellery
- 8 perfume
- 9 a photo frame
- 10 a plant
- 11 a scarf
- 12 a set of glasses
- 13 a set of luggage
- 14 socks
- 15 a vase



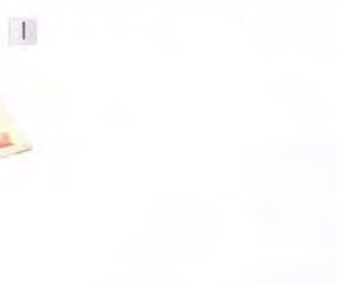
B Work in pairs and discuss. Which things are good gifts for you/your best friend/people in your family?

книга выложена группой vk.com/englishlibrary

MONEY

1A Match the words with photos A–H.

- 1 cash
- 2 a cash machine
- 3 change
- 4 a cheque
- 5 a coin
- 6 a credit card
- 7 a note
- 8 a receipt



B Work in pairs and discuss. Which things do you have in your bag now?

ABILITY VERBS

1 Match the sentences with photos A–J.

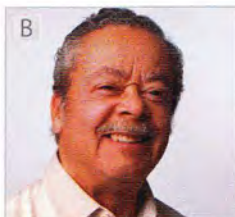
- 1 He can draw.
- 2 She can't lift it.
- 3 She can climb.
- 4 He can throw it.
- 5 He can't catch.
- 6 He can't type.
- 7 She can paint.
- 8 She can run.
- 9 She can't hear.
- 10 She can jump.



1.2

6A Student A: write three *yes/no* questions about photos A–C.

A: Is she an actress? Is she from France? Is she a singer?



Kenji is from Japan.
He's an actor.

Fatima is an engineer
from Egypt.

It's the city of Oporto, in
Portugal.

B Ask Student B your questions about photos A–C.

C Listen to Student B and answer questions about photos D–F.

1.3

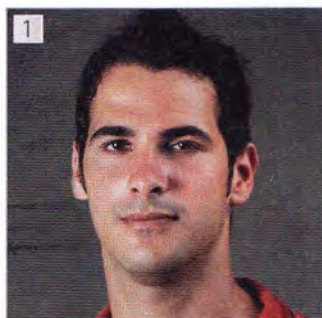
1D Student A: read the letters below to Student B.

B B C USA VIP FAQ OK

E Listen to Student B and write the letters.

2.1

6A Student A: look at the photos of your friends. Complete the notes below.



1
Name:
Nationality:
Job:
Where is he now?

2
Names:
Nationalities:
Jobs:
Where are they now?

B Work with other students. Cover your notes and talk about the photos.

2.2

p23

8A Student A: look at the information below. Make questions to find the missing information.

How old is Julia Becker?

Where is she ... ?

Gerhardt Becker, 38, and Julia Becker, _____ (age), are husband and wife. Gerhardt is German and Julia is from _____ (country). Their business is in Berlin, and they're _____ (jobs). Their company name is *Rad* and their special taxi-bus is good for families and big groups.

Jon and Liz Henderson are brother and sister, and their Moroccan restaurant, _____ (name), is in Ireland. They're not from Morocco, they're from _____ (country), but their restaurant is very good for Moroccan food.

3.3

p37

7 Student A: you are the waiter. Take the customer's order.

€1.50	€1.25
€2.00	€1.10

€3.25	€2.95

3.2

8 Student A: ask and answer questions to compare your picture with Student B's. Don't look at Student B's picture. Find six differences between the pictures.

A: In your picture, is Bai's jacket black?

B: No, it isn't. It's ...



4.3

5A Student B: look at the information. Write the events and times that Student A suggests.

Saturday	Sunday
10.15a.m. – film	9.30a.m. – festival
2.00p.m. – football match	
	8.15p.m. – concert

A: Let's go to a film on Saturday!

B: What time is it?

A: It's at quarter past ten.

B: OK!

B Ask Student A to come to your events.

B: Let's go to a football match on Saturday.

4.2

6A Student A: work with another Student A and look at Yong's desk. Say five things about Yong.

He studies English.



5.3

6B Student B: you are a hotel receptionist. Read the information and answer Student A's questions.

Hotel money exchange at reception:
8.30a.m.–12.30p.m. and 4.30p.m.–6.30p.m.
Lunch: hotel café: 12p.m.–3p.m.
Guided walking tour of the town: 9.30a.m.,
12.30p.m., 3.30p.m. €25.
Café Slavia: 8a.m.–11p.m.
Opera at the National Theatre: 8p.m., €35

6.2

5A Student A: answer Student B's questions about Venice and London.

A: Is there a train from the airport to Venice?

B: No, there isn't.

	Venice	London (Heathrow)
train / from the airport?	no	£18
underground?	no	£5
airport bus?	€3	£15
other information?	waterbus, €20	train tickets £16.50 online, £23 on the train

B Ask Student B questions to complete the information for Barcelona and Edinburgh.

B: Is there a train from the airport to Barcelona?

A: Yes, there is. It's three euros.

	Barcelona	Edinburgh
train / from the airport?		
underground?		
airport bus?		
other information?		

C What's the best way to go from the airport to the centre in these four cities?

6.3

6A Student B: you work in a ticket office in the bus station in Amsterdam. Look at the information and answer Student A's questions.

ticket	a single to Brussels
price	€14
time of next bus	9a.m.
gate	4
arrival time	2.15p.m.

B Change roles. Student B: you are at the central train station in Amsterdam. You want to buy a ticket. Ask Student A questions to complete the table.

ticket	a return to Paris
price	
time of next train	
platform	
arrival time	

REVIEW 4: UNITS 7–8

4A Students A and B: work in pairs. Read the situation and answer the questions.

On Monday at half past one in the afternoon there was a robbery at a clothes shop. You were the robbers! You said you were at a restaurant, but you weren't.

- Where was the robbery?
- Where were the robbers?
- Were you at the restaurant?

B Work in pairs and write answers to the police's questions. Do not tell the truth!

- What time did you arrive at the restaurant?
- What was the name of the restaurant?
- What type of restaurant was it?
- What did you eat?
- How much did it cost?

C Write down other important information.

D Work in groups and answer the police's questions.

9.3

5C Student A: ask Student B the questions.

- Where were you this time last year?
- What was your first teacher's name?
- Spell your first name backwards (e.g. John: n-h-o-j).
- What would you like for your next meal?

6.1

6 Student A: ask and answer questions to compare your picture with Student B's. Don't look at Student B's picture. Find five differences between the two pictures.

A: Are there two hotels in your picture?

B: No, there's one hotel. That's one difference!



3.2

8 Student B: ask and answer questions to compare your picture with Student A's. Don't look at Student A's picture. Find six differences between your pictures.

B: In your picture, are Paul's trousers black?

A: No, they aren't. They're ...



7.4

3D Work in groups. Do the quiz. Use the key phrases from page 81 to help.

- Nelson Mandela was free
- Obama was the new president of the USA
- The end of the Berlin Wall
- YouTube started
- Russian Yuri Gagarin was the first man in space
- September 11 terrorist attacks in the USA
- Princess Diana died

1961 1989 1990 1997 2001 2005 2008

E Turn to page 153 to check your answers.

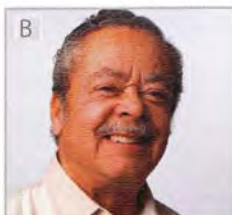
1.2

6A Student B: write three *yes/no* questions about photos D–F.

B: Is he a doctor? Is he from China? Is he a businessman?



Yolanda is from England. She's a sports teacher.



Niko is a taxi driver from Greece.



It's the city of Kobe, in Japan.



B Listen to Student A and answer questions about photos A–C.

C Ask Student A your questions about photos D–F.

1.3

1D Student B: listen to Student A and write the letters.

E Read the letters below to Student A.

DVD EU WWW IBM UK

2.1

6A Student B: look at the photos of your friends. Complete the notes below.



1
Name:
Nationality:
Job:
Where is she now?

2
Names:
Nationalities:
Jobs:
Where are they now?

B Work with other students. Cover your notes and talk about the photos.

3.3

p37

7 Student B: you are the customer. You have nine euros. Order food and drink for two people.



9.3

5C Student B: ask Student A the questions.

- 1 What's your favourite colour?
- 2 Count backwards from 10–1.
- 3 Where were you this time last week?
- 4 Would you like a cat?

10.1

6B

Section A: 10+ points. You're good at the arts, so maybe the best job for you is a singer, an actor, a dancer or a musician. But maybe you don't like singing and dancing in front of a lot of people. That's OK, you can teach other people.

Section B: 10+ points. OK, you're active and sporty, but there aren't a lot of jobs for sportsmen or women. You can play sports at the weekend and get a job in the week teaching sports in a school or a gym. Or maybe you can be a salesperson in a sports shop.

Section C: 10+ points. You're good with your head. Maybe an office job is best for you, but do you like working with people? Then how about a job in a bank or as a manager in a big company? Do you like working alone? Then maybe a job with computers is good for you.

10+ points in no sections? Don't worry, there's a job for you ... but we can't tell you what it is! What do you think?

6.1

6 Student B: ask and answer questions to compare your picture with Student A's. Don't look at Student A's picture. Find five differences between the two pictures.

A: Are there two hotels in your picture?

B: No, there's one hotel. That's one difference!



REVIEW 1: UNITS 1-2

5 Student A: look at the table and ask questions to complete the information.

First name	¹ Frank	² Fatimah	³ Neil and Sandra
Family name	Cho		Macdonald
Nationality		English	
Age	28		23 and 20
Job		nurse	
Email address		faha@yahoo.com	

B: Number one is Frank. What's his family name?

A: Cho.

B: How do you spell it?

A: C-h-o. What's his nationality?

4.2

6A Student B: work with another Student B and look at Danny's desk. Say five things about Danny.

He studies Portuguese.



5.3

6C Student A: you are a hotel receptionist. Read the information and answer Student B's questions.

Hotel money exchange at reception:
9.30a.m.–12.30p.m. and 3.30p.m.–8.30p.m.

Lunch: hotel café: 11.30a.m.–3.30p.m.

Guided walking tour of the town: 10a.m.,
1.15p.m., 6.30p.m., €20 (evening €30)

Café Milena: 10a.m.–8p.m.

Opera at the Prague State Opera: 7p.m., €50

7.4

Key to quiz

- 1961 Russian Yuri Gagarin was the first man in space
- 1989 The end of the Berlin Wall
- 1990 Nelson Mandela was free
- 1997 Princess Diana died
- 2001 September 11 terrorist attacks in the USA
- 2005 YouTube started
- 2008 Obama was the new president of the USA

LEAD-IN Recording 4

Conversation 1

A: OK, Antonio. What's 'libro' in English?
B: Sorry, I don't know.
A: It's 'book'.
B: Can you write it, please?
A: Yes ...

Conversation 2

A: OK. Open your books, please.
B: Sorry, I don't understand.
A: Open, like this.
B: Which page?
A: Page eight.
B: Can you repeat that, please?
A: Yes, page eight.
B: Thank you.

UNIT 1 Recording 1

Conversation 1

A: Hello, I'm Simon.
B: Hi, I'm Carmen.
A: Nice to meet you.
B: Nice to meet you, too.
A: Where are you from?
B: I'm from Spain.
A: Oh, where in Spain?
B: From Madrid.

Conversation 2

A: Hello, I'm Dave.
B: Hi, I'm Cindy.
A: Nice to meet you.
B: Nice to meet you, too.
A: Where are you from?
B: I'm from the US.
A: Oh, where in the US?
B: From New York.

Conversation 3

A: Hi, I'm Sue.
B: Hello, I'm Tom.
A: Nice to meet you.
B: Nice to meet you, too.
A: Where are you from?
B: I'm from Australia.
A: Oh. Are you from Sydney?
B: No, I'm not. I'm from Melbourne.

Conversation 4

A: Hi, I'm Martin.
B: Hi, I'm Katie.
A: Nice to meet you.
B: Nice to meet you, too.
A: Are you from Ireland?
B: Yes, I am.
A: Oh, where in Ireland?
B: From Dublin.

UNIT 1 Recording 3

Conversation 1

A: Hello, I'm Janet.
B: Hi, I'm Paul. Nice to meet you.
A: Nice to meet you, too. Where are you from?
B: I'm from South Africa.
A: Oh, where in South Africa?
B: From Cape Town.

Conversation 2

A: Hello, I'm Kasia.

B: Hi, I'm Peter.
A: Nice to meet you.
B: Nice to meet you, too. Where are you from?
A: I'm from Poland.
B: Are you from Warsaw?
A: No, I'm not. I'm from Gdansk.

UNIT 1 Recording 6

1 He's an actor.
2 She's a student.
3 Is he from India?
4 Is it your first time here?
5 Yes, it is.

UNIT 1 Recording 9

Conversation 1

A: Good evening. Can I help you?
B: My name's Taylor. Frances Taylor.
A: How do you spell that?
B: T-a-y-l-o-r.
A: T-a-y-l-o-r.
B: Yes.
A: And your first name?
B: It's Frances.
A: F-r-a-n-c ... is it i-s?
B: No, e. E as in England. F-r-a-n-c-e-s.
A: Thanks. OK, here's your visitor's card. You're in studio 379.
B: Thank you.
A: You're welcome.

Conversation 2

A: Can I help you?
B: Yes, I'm a student, a new student.
A: Welcome to the school. What's your family name?
B: Almeida.
A: How do you spell Almeida?
B: A-l-m-e-i-d-a.
A: And what's your first name?
B: Anabella.
A: OK, Anabella. Here's your student card.
B: Thank you. Oh, my first name's wrong.
A: Oh, sorry. How do you spell it?
B: It's Anabella, A-n-a-b-e-l-l-a.
A: A-n-a-b-e-l-l-a.
B: That's right.
A: OK, Anabella. You're in room 124.
B: 124?
A: Yes.

Conversation 3

A: OK, what's your family name?
B: Young, Y-o-u-n-g.
A: Ah-huh. And what's your first name?
B: Stefanie.
A: How do you spell that?
B: S-t-e-f-a-n-i-e.
A: Ah yes, for the fitness class in room ten.
B: That's right.
A: What's your phone number?
B: Er ... it's oh five three two, four one nine.
A: And what's your email address?
B: It's stef at yahoo dot com.
A: OK, thank you.

UNIT 1 Recording 12

Hello, or 'dia duit' from Ireland. My name's Kaitlin and I'm from Dublin, the capital city of

Ireland. Dublin's a beautiful city. It isn't very big but it's very old. I'm a tourist information assistant, at the tourist information office in the centre of Dublin. So of course, English is important for my job. The countryside in Ireland is beautiful with mountains, rivers and the sea. The villages are old and beautiful. Goodbye, or 'slan' in Irish.

p20 UNIT 2 Recording 2

Conversation 1

B: Hi, Erika. Coffee?
A: No thanks.
B: Hey, photos. Let's see ...
A: Yes, from the party.
B: The party?
A: Yes, my daughter's birthday. At the weekend.
B: Oh, great. Is this your family?
A: Yes, me, my husband, my two sons and my daughter.
B: And where are you?
A: We're at home in ...

Conversation 2

B: Oh, and is this your mother?
A: Yes, this is my mum. And me, of course.
B: And the birthday cake.
A: Yes.
B: What's your mother's name?
A: Margit.
B: Margaret?
A: Well, yes, Margaret in English. Margit in Hungarian.
B: Are you Hungarian? You and your mother?
A: Yes.
B: You aren't English?
A: No, we aren't English!
B: Really, your English is very good!
A: Well thanks but ...

Conversation 3

A: This is me and Tim.
B: Your husband.
A: Yeah.
B: Is he Hungarian too?
A: No, he's English.
B: I see. And what's his job?
A: He's a businessman.
B: A businessman. What business is he in?
A: The hotel and restaurant business.
B: Hmm ...

Conversation 4

A: ... and this is a photo of the children.
B: Oh, it's a great picture.
A: Yeah.
B: And this is the birthday girl?
A: Yes, our daughter Florence. We call her Flori.
B: Ahhh. How old is she?
A: She's seven now.
B: And your sons ...
A: Yes, Johnny and Lewis.
B: Are they students?
A: Yes. Johnny's at the University of London.
B: And Lewis?
A: Lewis is at music school. He's a musician.
Guitar, piano ...
B: Really? That's great ...

UNIT 2 Recording 4

- 1 We're from England.
- 2 They're actors.
- 3 We're in Japan.
- 4 You're right.
- 5 We're in class.
- 6 They're here.

UNIT 2 Recording 8

Conversation 1

- A: Good class.
 B: Yes.
 A: I'm hungry.
 B: Yeah, me too. Let's eat.
 A: OK, where?
 B: Erm ... that Italian café? What's its name?
 A: Lugo?
 B: Yeah, let's go to Café Lugo.
 A: OK. Good idea.

Conversation 2

- A: Hello, are you Mr Tajima?
 B: Yes.
 A: I'm Lee Smith.
 B: Oh, hello. Nice to meet you, Mr Smith.
 A: Nice to meet you, too.
 B: Erm ... let's sit down. Coffee?
 A: Yes, please.

Conversation 3

- A: Let's have a break.
 B: Good idea. I'm tired
 A: Me too.
 B: ... and hot.
 A: Yeah. Let's stop.
 B: Yeah, OK. Let's have a cola.
 A: OK.

UNIT 2 Recording 9

- 1 Let's eat.
- 2 Let's sit down.
- 3 Let's have a break.
- 4 Let's stop.
- 5 Let's have a cola.

UNIT 2 Recording 10

- 1 A: Let's have a break.
 B: Good idea.
 2 A: Let's sit down.
 B: OK.
 3 A: Let's have a coffee.
 B: OK.
 4 A: Let's walk.
 B: OK.

UNIT 2 Recording 11

OK, five people in my life. The first is Duncan. Duncan's my brother. He's thirty-one and he's a businessman. And Sarah ... Sarah's a very good friend, my best friend really. She's from Scotland and she's a teacher. We are on the phone a lot! She's great. And this, this is Mark. I'm an office worker and Mark's my manager but he's very nice, very friendly. And Wendy is in my class. We're in a Spanish class together. Our teacher is Rosa. She's from Madrid in Spain and Wendy and I sit together in the class and now we're friends. The class is good ... but our Spanish isn't very good!

REVIEW 1 Recording 1

Conversation 1

- A: Hello, I'm Tony Morelli.
 B: Hi, I'm Frank Cho.
 A: Nice to meet you.
 B: Nice to meet you, too. Is Morelli an Italian name?
 A: Yes, it is, but I'm American.
 B: I see.
 A: And are you from China?
 B: No, Cho is a Korean name. I'm from Korea. It's good music, yeah?
 A: Yeah, it's good. The singer is my friend ...

Conversation 2

- A: Hi, I'm Fatimah.
 B: Hello, my name's Terry. Terry Gonzales.
 A: Nice to meet you.
 B: And you. Is Fatimah your family name or your first name?
 A: It's my first name. It's an Arabic name.
 B: Where are you from?
 A: My father's from Egypt, but I'm English. And you? Is Gonzales a Spanish name?
 B: Yes, it is but I'm not from Spain, I'm from Colombia.
 A: Oh, where in Colombia?
 B: Bogotá.
 A: Hey, I'm hungry.
 B: Me too. Let's go and eat something.
 A: Good idea. So, what ... ?

Conversation 3

- A: Brad Churchill, nice to meet you.
 B: Sue Takahashi. Nice to meet you, too.
 A: Your English is very good!
 B: Thanks, but I'm from Canada.
 A: Oh, I'm sorry. But Takahashi is a Japanese name.
 B: Yes, my family is from Japan, but I'm Canadian.
 A: Ah. Yes, my name's Churchill, very English! But I'm Australian, from Sydney.
 B: Oh, I know Sydney.
 A: Really? Hey, let's go and have a coffee.
 B: OK, yeah I ...

UNIT 3 Recording 2

Conversation 1

- A: Congratulations, Sam, and welcome to the company.
 B: Thank you, Mr Stanford.
 A: Bill.
 B: Thank you ... Bill.
 A: These are your keys.
 B: My keys?
 A: Yes, keys to the building and the office. And the company car.
 B: Great, thanks.

Conversation 2

- A: Hey, Anne. What's that?
 B: This is my new phone, my work phone.
 A: Nice.
 C: Ahem.
 B: Yeah, some great games. Look at this, Jill.
 A: Oooh ...
 B: And music.
 A: Wow, great.

C: AHEN!

- B: And here's a video of my baby.
 C: Sorry, ladies. Lovely phone, but is this a coffee break?
 A: Oh, sorry Mr Fletcher. Hmm ... Good idea. Let's have a break!

Conversation 3

- A: Thanks, Janet.
 B: No problem. What's in this box? It's very heavy.
 A: It's my new printer.
 B: And what's in those boxes?
 A: Oh, these small boxes are my office things. Oh, be careful!
 B: Oh, no. Denise, I'm so sorry.
 A: Oh, no. My new printer.
 B: I'm so sorry ...

Conversation 4

- A: ... and come in here. This is my home office.
 B: OK. And is that your new computer?
 A: Yeah, it is.
 B: Nice. Is it good?
 A: Yeah.
 B: Expensive?
 A: Erm ... yeah.

UNIT 3 Recording 5

- A These are Elvis Presley's white trousers from a concert in Nashville.
 B I'm sure you know this from photos of Marilyn Monroe. It's her black jacket.
 C This is very famous. It's Michael Jackson's red shirt from the 1990s.
 D This is from a tennis match in Mexico in 2009. It's Venus Williams's blue hat. It's the winner's hat.
 E This is a typical schoolboy sweater, so you probably know it's Harry Potter's brown sweater.
 F That's Usain Bolt's yellow t-shirt. It's his t-shirt for running.

UNIT 3 Recording 6

Conversation 1

- A: Can I have a coffee, please?
 B: With milk?
 A: No thanks. Black.
 B: Sugar?
 A: Yes, please. One.
 B: One black coffee with sugar! That's five euros.

Conversation 2

- A: Can I have two coffees, please?
 B: Espresso or cappuccino?
 A: Oh, espresso, please.
 B: Anything else?
 A: No thanks. How much is that?
 B: That's four euros fifty.

Conversation 3

- A: Hi.
 B: Hi. Can I have an egg sandwich, please?
 A: White or brown bread?
 B: Oh, brown bread, please.
 A: Anything else?
 B: Yeah, can I have one of those cakes?
 A: These ones?
 B: No, the chocolate ones.
 A: Anything to drink?

B: Yes, a mineral water, please. How much is that?

A: That's two euros for the sandwich, one for the cake and one for the mineral water. That's four euros.

B: Here you are.

Conversation 4

A: Can I have a mineral water, please?

B: Still or sparkling?

A: Sparkling, please.

B: Anything else?

A: No, thank you. How much is that?

B: That's two euros.

UNIT 3 Recording 10

A: Excuse me.

B: Yes.

A: Where are those lamps from?

B: They're from Turkey.

A: Can I have a look?

B: Yes. This one?

A: No, that one. The blue one.

B: It's very nice.

A: How much is it?

B: It's two hundred.

A: That's expensive. Hmm. Fifty.

B: One hundred and fifty.

A: Seventy-five.

B: For you, a special discount. Only one hundred.

A: OK. One hundred.

B: It's a very good price.

UNIT 4 Recording 1

A: Excuse me. Do you have a moment?

B: Yes?

A: You aren't American?

B: No, no, I'm from Japan. I'm on holiday here.

A: OK. So, my question is: what's different for you about life here?

B: Erm ... well, here people live in houses ... they live in big houses. I'm from Tokyo, and we live in flats, small flats. So that's very different.

A: ... and so for you, what's different about life here?

C: Erm ... well I study at university here. And it's very different from my country because here in the United States, the students have jobs. They work in the evenings, maybe ten hours a week.

A: And you? Do you work?

C: Me? No, I don't. I don't have time. And in my country students don't work, they only study.

D: What's different here? Erm ... oh yeah, people drive everywhere. I mean, they drive two hundred metres to the shops.

A: Do you have a car?

D: Yes, I do, but I don't drive to the shops. Not two hundred metres! I walk.

A: And where are you from?

D: I'm from England.

E: I think it's not so different. I'm from Italy and my American friends are not so different from me. Er ... we like sport ... we like clothes ... We, er ... we go to the cinema, restaurants, have a coffee ...

A: So you like the same things.

E: Yeah, the same ... not different.

UNIT 4 Recording 5

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me, what time is it?

B: It's four o'clock.

A: Thank you. Oh, and do you know ... where's the music festival?

B: You go down here and ...

Conversation 2

A: Hi, Lisa.

B: Hi, Manuel. Come and sit down.

A: It's time for class.

B: What time's the lesson?

A: At half past three. New time.

B: Oh, no. We're late.

A: Yeah, let's go.

Conversation 3

A: Excuse me. What time is the film?

B: At quarter to nine and half past ten.

A: Oh, that's late. Is there an early one?

B: Hmmm ... yeah, at quarter past six.

Conversation 4

A: The World Cup Final is on TV tomorrow!

B: What time's the match?

A: Erm ... at quarter past two.

B: Quarter past two. Thanks.

Conversation 5

A: We're late again.

B: No, we're not. It's a party. It's OK to be late.

A: What time is it now?

B: It's quarter to eleven.

A: Quarter to eleven?

B: It's OK ...

Conversation 6

A: What time is the concert?

B: At quarter past seven.

A: Sorry? When?

B: Quarter past seven.

A: Quarter past seven. Thanks.

UNIT 4 Recording 7

A: Sorry? When?

UNIT 4 Recording 8

My favourite season is autumn. I like it because it's not too hot and not too cold. I don't like the summer or the winter because I don't like very hot or very cold weather. In autumn, the trees are beautiful ... all red and yellow. At the weekend, I walk with my family in the mountains. My favourite holiday is in autumn. It's Thanksgiving, and it's in November. The family comes together for a big dinner. I also like autumn because it's the start of the school year. I know some people don't like school, but I'm a teacher and I like it!

REVIEW 2 Recording 1

A: So if I press this ...

B: Beth, who's that?

A: These are my favourite people.

B: That woman. She's beautiful.

A: William! That's my sister Alicia. Watch it!

B: Your sister? Oh ... who's that then?

A: That's Keith. He's a good friend from university.

B: Do you meet a lot now?

A: No, but we email each other every day.

B: And this?

A: Monique, from work.

B: Are you friends?

A: Not really. But I like her a lot.

B: And if I press this ... Oh, look!

A: Yeah, Paris ...

B: ... Cairo ... and the Great Wall of China. Big traveller!

A: Yeah, then here ...

B: Hey, nice dress.

A: You know that dress. My black party dress.

B: Yeah, I like that dress. Oh, you like the BBC.

A: Yeah, the website's great for the news.

B: Let's look at ... What's this? Ice cream?

A: Yeah, from the Gelatino Café. I love it. But I don't go there a lot.

B: And what's this?

A: Johnny Depp.

B: Is he one of your favourite people?

A: No, but *Pirates of the Caribbean* is one of my favourite films.

B: And here's another film, *Pirates of the Caribbean II*, Johnny Depp again and here's ...

A: OK, that's enough ...

UNIT 5 Recording 2

Conversation 1

A: How's the family?

B: Fine. Well, you remember Clara?

A: Clara, your daughter? Yes, how old is she now?

B: She's seventeen.

A: She isn't at school?

B: No.

A: Does she have a job?

B: No, she doesn't. That's the problem.

A: So what does she do all day?

B: Well, she listens to her music and ... and she sleeps a lot.

A: What time does she get up?

B: I don't know because I'm at work. At the weekend she gets up at eleven.

A: Does she want a job?

B: I don't know. She doesn't talk much.

A: What do you mean?

B: Well, for example, in the evenings, we have dinner together. But Clara just sits there and listens to her music. Or she answers her phone and talks to her friends, but not to her family. It drives me crazy.

A: Does she ... ?

Conversation 2

A: Hi, Paula.

B: Hi. What's the problem? You look bad.

A: It's Julio.

B: Julio?

A: Yeah. Well, he doesn't listen to me.

B: What do you mean?

A: Well, I talk about my problems and he just checks his text messages or watches TV.

B: Does he talk to you?

A: Yeah ... well, no ... he says 'Mmmm'.

B: 'Mmmm'? What does that mean?

A: It means he doesn't really listen.

B: Oh, my boyfriend is exactly the same.

Conversation 3

A: Hey, Wayne. What's up? You look tired.

B: Yeah. No sleep.
 A: What's the problem?
 B: Neighbours. Problem neighbours. Or just one, the man in the flat upstairs.
 A: Why? Does he play loud music? Big parties?
 B: No, he doesn't. The problem is he works at night. He goes to work at six in the evening. I get home and I see him go to work every night.
 A: What's his job?
 B: He sells coffee in a snack bar at the train station.
 A: And when does he get home?
 B: About half past four. And then he watches television for two or three hours.
 A: So when does he go to bed?
 B: Oh, about six or seven.
 A: And what time do you get up?
 B: Huh! Now I get up at five. It's impossible to sleep. So I listen to music, drink coffee then I go to work around eight.
 A: And when do you go to bed?
 B: Late. Midnight or 1 a.m.
 A: Ooh, four hours' sleep. Not good.

UNIT 5 Recording 6

A: Excuse me?
 B: Yes, can I help you?
 A: I have a reservation for tonight.
 B: And your name?
 A: Shannon.
 B: Ah, yes. Miss Shannon. A single for two nights.
 A: That's right.
 B: I'm sorry, but your room isn't ready yet.
 A: Oh, am I early? What time is check-in?
 B: 2 p.m. usually. Your room is almost ready. Please have a seat.
 A: Thank you. I have one question.
 B: Yes?
 A: When does the gym open?
 B: It opens from 6 a.m. to 10 p.m., except lunchtime. It closes from twelve to one.
 A: Lovely. Oh, just one more question. What time is breakfast?
 B: From half past six to nine o'clock.
 A: And where is it?
 B: In the restaurant, over there.
 A: Thank you.
 A: Excuse me?
 B: Yes?
 A: Me again. I have one more question.
 B: Sure.
 A: Do you have a hairdresser's in the hotel?
 B: Yes, it opens every day except Monday.
 A: And today's Monday.
 B: Yes, I'm sorry. But it opens tomorrow.
 A: That's good.
 B: From ten to six. Actually, I'm wrong. On Tuesdays, it closes at nine o'clock in the evening.
 A: That's great, thank you.
 B: Excuse me, madam.
 A: Yes?
 B: Your room's ready now. Here's your key card. Room 538 on the fifth floor.
 A: Wonderful, thank you.
 B: You're welcome. Enjoy your stay.
 A: Oh, but I have one more question.
 B: Yes?
 A: I want to go on a guided tour of the old

town. Do you know a good one?
 B: Ah, yes. We do a tour from the hotel.
 A: Oh good. When does the tour leave?
 B: It leaves at 9 a.m. and at 3 p.m.
 A: How much does it cost?
 B: It costs fifteen euros.
 A: Great. Thank you.
 B: Any more questions I can help you with?
 A: No, thank you. Oh, just one ...

UNIT 5 Recording 8

A: When does the gym open?
 B: It opens from 6 a.m. to 10 p.m., except lunchtime. It closes from twelve to one.
 A: Lovely. Oh, just one ...
 A: Do you have a hairdresser's in the hotel?
 B: Yes, it opens every day except Monday.
 A: And today's Monday.
 B: Yes, I'm sorry. But it opens tomorrow.
 A: That's good.
 B: From ten to six. Actually, I'm wrong. On Tuesdays it closes at nine o'clock in the evening.
 A: That's great, thank you.
 B: Your room's ready now. Here's your key card. Room 538 on the fifth floor.
 A: Wonderful, thank you.
 B: You're welcome.
 A: I want to go on a guided tour of the old town. Do you know a good one?
 B: Ah, yes. We do a tour from the hotel.
 A: Oh good. When does the tour leave?
 B: It leaves at 9 a.m. and at 3 p.m.
 A: And how much does it cost?
 B: It costs fifteen euros.
 A: Great. Thank you.

UNIT 5 Recording 10

A: What's on your list?
 B: Well, number one on my list is fruit.
 A: Fruit? Why fruit?
 B: It's good for you.
 A: Do you really like it?
 B: I like bananas and apples.
 A: Bananas and apples. That's two things.
 B: OK, fine. One is bananas and two is apples.
 A: And what's number three on your list?
 B: Number three is ice cream. I love ice cream.
 A: Me too. It's on my list.
 B: Maybe it's bad for you, but ...
 A: Ice cream and fruit. That's OK.
 B: Yeah, with fruit, it's good.
 A: And number four?
 B: Pasta with cheese.
 A: Mmm ... that's two ...
 B: No, I think it's one. I eat pasta every day. With butter, with cheese ...
 A: Yeah.
 B: And number five is cereal.
 A: Really? Do you really like cereal?
 B: I do, yes.
 A: What about drinks?
 B: Milk for my cereal.
 B: Yes. And what other drink do you have?
 B: I have tea. English tea.
 A: Of course. Me too.

UNIT 6 Recording 2

A: Excuse me ... ?
 B: Sorry, I'm in a hurry.
 A: Excuse me?
 C: Yes?
 A: Is there a train to Paris tonight?
 C: No, sorry, there aren't any trains tonight. It's the weather. It's very bad.
 A: Not any trains? Not one?
 C: No, not tonight. Maybe tomorrow. They ...
 D: Hello? Pete, where are you?
 A: Hi, I'm here in London, in the station, but there aren't any trains and ... Oh, no ... Excuse me, is there a payphone near here? My phone's dead.
 E: Yes, there's a payphone over there.
 A: Thanks. Oh, and is there an internet café?
 E: Erm ... I don't think so. No, there isn't an internet café. Not in the station but there's one in Judd Street.
 A: Judd Street. Thanks.
 F: Can I help you?
 A: Yes. Are there any restaurants in the station?
 F: Yes, there are ... but ... what's the time?
 A: Half past eleven.
 F: Ah, they're closed now, but there's a snack bar over there. That's open.
 A: And is there a cash machine here?
 F: Yes, over there.
 A: Thanks. And hotels?
 F: There are two hotels near here. The Charlotte Street Hotel ... that's about two hundred and fifty pounds a night.
 A: Two hundred and fifty pounds? That's expensive.
 F: And there's the Ridgemount, that's about eighty pounds.
 A: Where's that?
 F: It's here on the map.
 A: OK ... thank you for your help.

UNIT 6 Recording 5

A: A ticket to Amsterdam, please.
 B: Single or return?
 A: Return, please.
 B: Leaving today?
 A: Yes.
 B: When do you want to come back?
 A: Tomorrow afternoon.
 B: OK. That's twenty-nine euros.
 A: What time's the next bus?
 B: There's one at half past two.
 A: What time does it arrive in Amsterdam?
 B: At quarter past four. Here's your ticket.
 A: Thanks a lot.
 B: The bus leaves from gate twenty-four.
 A: Sorry? Gate thirty-four?
 B: No, gate twenty-four.
 A: Thanks a lot.

UNIT 6 Recording 6

A: A ticket to Amsterdam, please.
 B: Single or return?
 A: Return, please.
 B: Leaving today?
 A: Yes.
 B: When do you want to come back?
 A: Tomorrow afternoon.

B: OK. That's twenty-nine euros.
A: What time's the next bus?
B: There's one at half past two.
A: What time does it arrive in Amsterdam?
B: At quarter past four. Here's your ticket.
A: Thanks a lot.
B: The bus leaves from gate twenty-four.

UNIT 6 Recording 8

I live in London but I'm from the countryside. British people love their cars, but it's expensive to drive in London. There's a good public transport system and a lot of people use the underground or buses. Some people go to work by bike but I don't. I think bikes are dangerous in the city. The best way to travel is by underground, but it's very crowded in the mornings. In the countryside, a lot of people drive, of course, or they use buses. In my village, I go everywhere by bike.

REVIEW 3 Recording 1

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me.
B: Yeah.
A: There's a problem with my coffee. It's cold.
B: Oh, sorry. Let me get you another one.
A: Thanks.

Conversation 2

A: Do you have *The New York Times*?
B: Sorry, we don't. We usually have it, but not today.
A: Oh. Well, do you have any other newspapers in English?
B: We have *The Times*.
A: That's a British paper, yeah?
B: That's right.
A: Hmm, no thanks. I really want an American paper.

Conversation 3

A: OK, let's get some money out.
B: What's the problem?
A: It says there isn't any money in the machine.
B: Oh, no.
A: Maybe it's because it's a bank holiday. Look, I have some money. Let's go to Salvatore's café. It isn't expensive.

Conversation 4

A: Excuse me.
B: Is there a problem?
A: Yes, I'm in number three and the computer's broken.
B: Let me see. Ah, yes, there's a problem. Please try number five.

Conversation 5

A: Can I help you?
B: Yes, I'm not very well. I'm very hot and I'm tired all the time. Do you have something to help?
A: These are good. Go home and go to bed.
B: How much are they?
A: Five euros.
B: Five euros. Hmm, no thank you.

UNIT 7 Recording 1

I was at home with my parents and my brother and sister. There was a family party, but nothing really special. There were fireworks

on TV ... but I think I was asleep at midnight. I don't really remember.

2 We were in Miami, Florida, at a concert. The bands were great – the Gipsy Kings and some other local bands. It was great.

3 I was at work in London. I work at a club, and of course it was a very big night for us. The money was good. Everybody was happy, crazy. There were fantastic fireworks over the River Thames.

4 I was on a beach in Fiji with my friends. There was a beautiful sunrise. We were the first people to see the start of the year 2000. And we weren't alone – there were hundreds of people on the beach with us. It was a beautiful morning, very peaceful ...

5 I was in hospital. I was born on January 1st, 2000. My mother says there was a party. Maybe it was for the New Year ... or was the party for me?

UNIT 7 Recording 9

Conversation 1

A: Hey, let's go!
B: What?
A: Let's go!
B: Why?
A: The film. It's terrible.
B: Really? I think it's great!
A: Oh, come on. Let's just go.
B: No, let's stay. Here, have a sweet.
A: Thanks a lot.

Conversation 2

A: How was your steak?
B: Delicious, just right. I really liked it. How was your chicken?
A: Urgh, I didn't like it. It wasn't very good.
B: Oh, well here's the ice cream. Thank you. Mmm, this is good.
A: Yes, this is nice.

Conversation 3

A: Hi.
B: Hi. How was the concert?
A: Fantastic! I loved it! The band was fantastic and the singer ... she was great!
B: Oh, yeah, she is good.
A: So, are you free tomorrow?

Conversation 4

A: Hi, Mary. How are you?
B: Fine, thanks and you?
A: I'm OK. Um, were you at Warren's party last night?
B: Yeah.
A: How was it?
B: It was all right ...
A: But ... ?
B: Mmm. Well, it was boring – there weren't a lot of people there.
A: Ah.
B: So where were you?
A: Ah, well. I was at Alan's party.
B: Alan's party?
A: Yeah, uh, sorry ...
B: Oh. How was it?
A: Er ... it was very good.

UNIT 7 Recording 11

A: OK, so which was first?
B: I think Chernobyl was first.
A: Yes, I agree. But which date – 1986 or 1991?
B: I think it was 1986.
A: OK let's put that. So, what was next?
B: I think Google started.
A: I'm not sure. Maybe the Asian tsunami?
B: No, Google was before the Asian tsunami.
A: OK. Which date?
B: Erm ... 1991, I think.
A: OK. 1991.
B: And I think the Asian tsunami was next, in 2004. I remember it well. It was in December at the end of the year.
A: OK, so that's 2004. And Michael Jackson?
B: He died in 2009, I think.
A: 2009. Right, let's check the answers.
A: OK, we were right about three answers. The Chernobyl nuclear accident was in 1986, the Asian tsunami was in 2004 and Michael Jackson died in 2009.
B: But we were wrong about Google?
A: Yes. Google didn't start in 1991. It started in 1996.

UNIT 8 Recording 2

A: Welcome to *Good and Bad*. This week we talk about holidays – good ones and bad ones. Our hotline is 123 2222. And here's our first caller. Hello, Ken?
B: Hi.
A: So, tell us about your two holidays.
B: Yeah, well my family went camping in Canada when I was twelve. We had one tent for six people, and we didn't have water or electricity.
A: Oh, right. Did you like it?
B: Yes, I did. It was ... fantastic. No TV, no internet ... we cooked on a fire and played games.
A: Sounds great. And your other holiday?
B: Last year I went to Sydney with my girlfriend. I lost my passport on the first day.
A: Sorry to hear that.
B: But Sydney was beautiful. We saw some interesting buildings and lovely museums ... but then I ate some bad food ... fish ... and I was very ill.
A: Ow. So that was a bad holiday. But as you say Sydney's a beautiful city.
B: Yes, it is.
A: OK, Ken. Thank you for calling. Next caller, Clare? Are you there?
C: Yeah, hello.
A: Hi. Tell us about your holidays.
B: Well, last year we went to France.
A: Oh, where did you go?
B: We went to Paris, but ... there was a problem with the plane. We waited for ten hours at the airport. Then they said there weren't any seats on the next plane. Or the next plane.
A: Oh, no! What did you do?
B: We went by train! We had five hours in Paris then we came home.
A: By plane?
B: No, by train. We had dinner on the train. Expensive sandwiches.
A: So that wasn't very good. How about your

other holiday? The good one?

C: Ah yes, it was in China. I was there for two months. I was alone, so I met a lot of local people. They were very nice.

A: Did you speak English with them?

C: No, I didn't. I spoke a little Chinese and they liked that.

A: Great. Thanks, Clare. And next we have Dan. Hi, Dan.

D: Hi.

A: Is your first holiday good or bad?

D: Good – really good. I went to Peru. It was a walking holiday and it was wonderful.

A: Why was that?

D: Well, I went with a friend and we ...

UNIT 8 Recording 4

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me, where's the fruit?

B: Do you see the vegetables over there?

A: Vegetables? What are they?

B: Vegetables ... you know, tomatoes, potatoes, carrots.

A: Oh, vegetables.

B: Yeah. Vegetables.

A: OK ... vegetables.

B: The fruit's behind the vegetables.

A: Sorry?

B: You see the vegetables? They're in front of the fruit. Over there.

A: Let me check. The fruit's behind the vegetables.

B: Yes, that's right.

A: Oh, OK. Thanks.

B: No problem.

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me, where's the bread?

B: Er ... Do you see the snacks?

A: Snacks? I don't know 'snacks'.

B: Snacks, for example, chocolate, nuts and crisps.

A: Oh, I understand.

B: The bread is on the right of the snacks.

A: Can I check? On the right of the snacks?

B: Yes. Opposite the fruit.

A: Thank you.

B: You're welcome.

Conversation 3

A: Excuse me, where are the cakes?

B: I think they're near the snacks.

A: Near the snacks. Which way?

B: I'm not sure. I know the cereal is opposite the snacks ...

A: Cereal? What's that?

B: Cereal. Like Corn Flakes.

A: Er ... ?

B: Erm, for breakfast. You have it with milk.

A: Oh, OK.

B: Yes, so the cereal is opposite the snacks.

A: OK, and the cakes?

B: I think they're on the right of the cereal.

A: On the right. Thank you.

B: No problem. Or maybe ...

A: Thank you!

UNIT 8 Recording 6

This is my bad holiday story. Last year I went to Hawaii on holiday. First, I missed my plane,

so I took another plane. I arrived in Honolulu one day late. The weather was very bad, and it rained for the first three days. I stayed in my hotel room and read a book. The hotel was noisy because my room was next to the road. There was a restaurant, but the food was expensive, and it wasn't very good. I was there for two weeks, and I was very happy to go home.

REVIEW 4 Recording 1

1 My name's Sara. I'm the receptionist in the hotel. Mr Black and Mr Brown went out yesterday afternoon at a quarter to two. They came back together ... at about half past three, and they went to their rooms.

2 My name's Alan. I'm a waiter in the hotel restaurant. I was in the restaurant last night. There were two men and a woman in the restaurant all evening. One man and the woman danced for about half an hour – from half past nine to ten o'clock. They all left at ten o'clock.

3 I'm a guest in the hotel. My room is on the right of Mr and Mrs Black's room. Their radio was on last night from about ten to eleven. It was very noisy!

4 I'm the night receptionist. Mr Black went out at ten o'clock. He said he wanted to take a walk. Then at a quarter past ten, another man went out. I didn't see him very well. Maybe it was Mr Brown. I don't know.

5 My name's Mary White. I'm a guest in the hotel. I came back from the town at about half past ten. I saw a woman in front of the hotel. She had men's clothes: a man's jacket, a man's trousers and a man's hat. I was surprised, you know. A woman in a man's clothes. Was there a party or something?

UNIT 9 Recording 3

1 A shopping mistake? Um ... well my boyfriend wanted to go camping, so I bought him a tent. It was a good tent. I paid seventy pounds for it. Anyway, he put it up in the garden – once, I think. Imagine that, just one time! He never used it again. It was a waste of money. The truth is he really likes hotels!

2 I don't really know ... Oh yeah, last year my wife bought me an exercise bike. I thought it was a good idea, too, but you know, I think I used it three times. It was hard work! A real waste of money!

3 Shopping mistakes? Oh, that's easy. Clothes. I often buy clothes and then when I get them home I don't like them. For example, last month I went shopping with a friend and I bought a hat. It cost a hundred euros. My friend said it looked beautiful. My boyfriend said it was terrible ... so I sold it ... on the internet. I got fifty euros for it. It was a real waste of money.

4 A shopping mistake? Oh yes, all the time. For example, I got my sister's little boy some drums, for his birthday. I thought it was a good idea. He loves those drums. He plays them all day. So he's happy ... but my sister isn't happy. Now she doesn't talk to me! I phoned her yesterday, but she didn't answer.

5 A shopping mistake. Erm ... oh yeah, my mother gave us a lamp. We didn't like it, but I know it cost her a lot of money. Then after a week I broke it. I tried to fix it but it was impossible. Whoops!

UNIT 9 Recording 6

A: Hi, Tom. It's Lisa.

B: Oh hi, Lisa. How are you?

A: Fine thanks. Listen, what would you like for your birthday?

B: Oh, I don't know. Let me think ... I don't know.

A: I'm in Bridge's Department Store, so it's a good time to tell me ...

B: Um ... well, maybe something from the World Cup.

A: For example?

B: Er ...

A: Well, would you like a football shirt, or ... ?

B: Um ... no. Oh, I know! I'd like a DVD.

A: Of the World Cup?

B: Yeah.

A: OK.

B: Great, thanks.

A: No problem. Bye.

B: Bye.

A: Excuse me, can you help me? Where's the Sports department?

C: It's over there. Behind the Toys department.

A: Thanks.

D: Can I help you?

A: Yes, I'd like a DVD of the World Cup, but there aren't any DVDs here.

D: No, the sports DVDs are in Home Entertainment. In the DVD section.

A: Where's that?

D: It's opposite Computers and Phones. Over there.

A: Thanks.

Yeah, I'd like a DVD of the World Cup, but there are two different DVDs here. Which DVD is best, do you think?

E: Er ... let me see ... this one has all the important matches.

A: How much is it? Ah, I see. Twenty euros. OK, can I have this?

C: Yes, you pay over there.

A: Oh, right. Thanks.

E: No problem.

UNIT 9 Recording 9

1 What's your favourite fruit?

2 Where were you last Saturday afternoon?

3 Do you want a new car?

4 What did you study in the last lesson?

UNIT 9 Recording 10

One of my favourite possessions is my camera. It's very small, and I keep it in my bag. I bought it last year in New York. I like it because it's easy to use and it takes very good photos. I take photos of my friends, and of places and of me. I have a lot of photos of me in different places. I put them on my website. I travel a lot, and I usually travel alone, but my camera is my travel partner.

UNIT 10 Recording 1

Conversation 1

A: So, Greg. Thanks for coming in.

B: No problem.

A: Right, I have some questions for you.

B: OK.

A: Er ... first of all, can you ride a motorbike?
 B: Yes, um ... yes, I can. Of course.
 A: That's good. And do you know the city well?
 Can you find a place, fast?
 B: Yes, I can. No problem.
 A: And in this job you sometimes work alone ...
 B: That's not a problem.
 A: ... but you meet a lot of people.
 B: I like people.
 A: OK, good. Oh, and we sometimes get very
 busy and we need help in the kitchen – cleaning
 or cooking. Is that OK?
 B: Yeah, no problem. I worked in a café last year
 and I made sandwiches ... and pizzas.
 A: Great! Can you start tomorrow?
 B: Sure. Wow, I got the job?
 A: Yes, congratulations! Come and look at the
 motorbike.
 B: Oh, it's big.
 A: Yeah, here you go. Try it.
 B: Oh, er, OK. It's a bit difficult to ride. But I'm
 sure I can learn.
 A: Be careful!
 B: Aaah!
 A: Oh, no! Greg, are you OK? Next interview,
 I think.

Conversation 2

A: So, you think this is the job for you.
 B: Yeah, yeah I do.
 A: OK, can you sing?
 B: Yeah, I can. And I can play guitar.
 C: OK, great. Let's hear something.
 B: All right, here we go.
 C: Not bad! ... OK, that's good. Nice. And what
 about dancing?
 B: Ah ... I can dance, but not very well.
 A: Mmm. OK, but you can sing well and you're
 good on guitar.
 C: OK, we'd like to try you ... for a month.
 B: That's great!

Conversation 3

A: So, what languages can you speak?
 B: English, Japanese, Russian.
 A: Great. And can you drive?
 B: Yes.
 A: OK. And can you remember facts and
 information?
 B: Yes, I can. I have a very good memory.
 A: So, can you remember my name?
 B: Er ... Did you say your name? Erm ... Sorry, I
 can't remember.
 A: Oh, dear ... OK, let's try some other
 questions.

UNIT 10 Recording 3

- 1 Can you sing?
- 2 Yes, I can.
- 3 I can play guitar too.
- 4 Can you dance?
- 5 No, I can't.
- 6 I can't dance.

UNIT 10 Recording 4

Conversation 1

A: Hi, do you have a minute?
 B: Yeah, sure.
 A: What's your name?
 B: Tom.

A: OK, Tom. Can you look at this list? It's
 people's top ten goals in life.

B: Oh, OK.

A: So, do you have a goal for this year?

B: A goal? Yes, I want to learn something new.
 My girlfriend can cook really well, but she
 doesn't like cooking. So I'm going to learn to
 cook.

A: That's interesting. Any special type of
 cooking?

B: Yeah, Japanese food. I lived in Japan and I love
 Japanese food.

A: I see, well ...

Conversation 2

A: So, Fiona, do you have a goal for this year?

C: I'm going to change jobs.

A: That's a big change!

C: Yeah, well, I work in an office, and I don't like
 it. I'd like to work outside.

A: Great.

C: My friend Sheila is going to help me.

A: Well, good luck with that.

C: Thanks!

Conversation 3

A: Liam, do you have a goal for this year?

D: Yes, I do.

A: So, what are you going to do?

D: Well, I work with computers, sometimes
 twelve hours a day and I often take work home.
 It isn't good ...

A: Right.

D: ... so this year I'm going to spend more time
 with my friends and I'm not going to take work
 home.

A: Great.

Conversation 4

A: Rudi, what are your goals?

E: Er ... I'm going to get fit. I never do sport. I
 can't play tennis or anything, but I'm going to
 start exercising. Something easy. Take a walk
 every day.

A: Sounds good.

Conversation 5

A: What's your goal this year, Alex?

F: I have two goals really.

A: Oh, and what are they?

F: One is to save more money. The other is to
 see my friends more.

A: That's great. And what are your plans? With
 your friends?

F: Well ... hmm ... maybe go shopping together.

A: Go shopping? Then you aren't going to save
 money!

F: Yeah, but I'm not going to stop shopping!

UNIT 10 Recording 6

Conversation 1

A: Hi, Duncan.

B: Hi, how are you?

A: Good thanks. Hey, this is a great place.

B: Yes, it's really good. I often come here.

A: ... well, that was delicious. Let's have coffee.

B: OK ... wait, is that the time? I'm sorry, I have
 a lesson at two. Here's some money for lunch.

A: No, that's all right. Keep in touch!

B: See you in two weeks, after the holidays,
 yeah?

A: Oh yes, that's right. See you then ...

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me, do you have the time?

B: Yes, it's half past four.

A: Thanks. So ... erm ... where are you going?

B: Me? I'm going to ... so you're from Madrid.
 That's interesting.

A: Yes, well, I come from Córdoba. I moved to
 Madrid when I was ten.

B: I see ... oh, look, this is my station.

A: Look, here's my card.

B: And here's mine.

A: Very nice to meet you.

B: Nice to meet you, too.

A: I hope we meet again.

B: I hope so, too.

A: Goodbye.

B: Bye!

Conversation 3

A: What do you think of the music?

B: It's not bad.

A: Hi, I'm Doug.

B: Oh, hello. I'm Jo.

A: So, are you from around here?

B: No, I'm not actually. I'm from ...

A: ... yes and I was in China the next year. I
 speak Chinese, you know.

B: Oh, really?

A: And I speak four other languages. French,
 German, Spanish ...

B: I'm sorry, I can see an old friend over there.
 Nice to talk to you.

A: Oh ... and you.

B: See you later.

A: See you soon.

UNIT 10 Recording 9

Three years ago I bought a guitar. I wanted to
 learn to play guitar because I can sing and I like
 music. I tried to learn it alone. I had a book and
 I practised every day. I learned some songs,
 and I played guitar and sang the songs. I was
 happy, but then my boyfriend said I wasn't
 very good at it. He said I needed a teacher. So
 I found a teacher, and studied guitar with him.
 The teacher was great but it was very different
 because he gave me homework every week.
 After four months I played guitar really well. I
 still play every day.

REVIEW 5 Recording 1

1 I want to learn a lot of vocabulary, so I'm
 going to learn seven new words every day. I like
 reading, so I'm going to look at the BBC news
 website and write down new words.

2 Speaking is a problem for me. In the coffee
 break, I'm not going to speak in my language. I'm
 going to speak in English. All the time!

3 I can't understand English very well, so I'm
 going to practise listening. I'm going to listen to
 my CD and read the audio scripts at the same
 time.

4 My grammar is bad. Very bad! I'm going
 to look on the internet and do some extra
 grammar practice.

5 I want to improve my writing, so I'm going to
 write a diary every night, in English. I'm going to
 write about my day.

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
and Associated Companies throughout the world.
www.pearsonelt.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2012

The right of Frances Eales and Steve Oakes to be identified as authors of this Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2012

ISBN: 978-1-4082-9181-8

Set in Gill Sans Book 9.75/11.5

Printed in Slovakia by Neografia

Acknowledgements

The publishers and authors would like to thank the following people and institutions for their feedback and comments during the development of the material:

Brazil: Damian Williams, Stephen Greene; **Columbia:** Alvaro Castañeda; **Hungary:** Eszter Timar; **Italy:** Elizabeth Gregson; **Japan:** Paul Merrett; **Poland:** Lech Krzeminski; **Spain:** David Corp; **UK:** Kirsten Colquhoun, John Evans, Mary Henderson, Pip Langley.

Illustration acknowledgements: Daniel Hilliard 27, 32-33, 93, 98; Dermot Flynn (Dutch Uncle) 22; Fred Blunt (Meiklejohn Illustration) 91, 117, 119, 121, 123, 137; Infomen (Début art) 9, 88, 89; Joel Holland (Dutch Uncle) 38, 50, 72, 92, 94, 109, 116, 128; Jürgen Ziewe (Début Art) 42; Lyndon Hayes (Dutch Uncle) 10, 21, 34, 129, 148, 149, 151, 152, 153; Matt Herring (Début art) 30-31, 31, 115; Peter Hudspeth 133, 136; Phil Schramm (Meiklejohn Illustration) 80; Venita Kidwai 46.

Photo acknowledgements: The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

Alamy Images: 95cl, 98/A (Hat), Colin Bowling 99, Paul Bradbury 95cr, Rob Crandall 40c (House), Peter D. Noyce 66l, Danita Delimont 56cl, Marvin Dembinsky Photo Associates 7r, Eagle Visions Photography / Craig Lovell 139b/J, graficart.net 98/E (Drums), Hemis 90-91, Roberto Herrett 138/N, Peter Horree 36/B, hotelpix 56t, Image Source 30r, imagebroker 7l, Images & Stories 85, JJ pixs 147b/F, John Warburton-Lee Photography 14br, MBI 106t, Melba Photo Agency 74, moodboard 90tl, Pegaz 56cr, Jack Picone 35br, Prisma Bildagentur AG 36/D, PYMCA 95br, Diane Randell 62, Andres Rodriguez 13r, 42bl, RubberBall 40cr (American Football), Anna Stowe 17cl, Lynne Sutherland 144b/H, THINGX 32tr (Glasses), Travelshots.com 64t, Pat Tuson 144t/D, UpperCut Images 27br (Couple), Adam von Mack 67r, Nigel Westwood 62-63; **Alpha Press:** 36c; **BBC Motion Gallery:** 46c, 68l, 68r, 80cr, 102bc, 112cr, 112br; **BBC Photo Library:** 6tl, 83br, 90tr, 105br, 112l; **Bridgeman Art Library Ltd:** Private Collection / Photo © Christie's Images 33b/B; **Corbis:** Mark Baker 73bl, Bettmann 76c, Blend Images / Ned Frisk 147b/A, Blue Images 17l, Caroline Seidel / dpa 49, Joshua Dalsimer 86tr, Dave & Les Jacobs / cultura 51cl, 106b, Dave & Les Jacobs / cultura 51cl, 106b, Ellen Denuto 51cr, Design Pics CEF / Design Pics 43, Victor Fraile 33b/F, HBSS 115, Michael Heuberger / epa 61cr, Jon Hicks 41, Image Source 50b, 61bl, Jose Luis Pelaez Inc / Blend Images 108cl (Woman), Juice Images 8tc, Leah Warkentin / Design Pics 108cr (Man), Lucas Lenci 50t, Mardini 112-113, moodboard 23l, Ocean 8tl, 22r, 73cl, 76t, Osman Orsal / Reuters 29br, Santa Clara / Photonostop 102-103, Sora 39cr, Sunset Boulevard 33 (Elvis Presley), 33 (Marilyn Monroe), Craig Tuttle / Design Pics 51bl, Felix Wirth 101br, YM YIK / epa 32bc (Glove); **DK Images:** 32tl (Guitar), 58/B, 97tr, 102/B (Video Tape), Demetrio Carrasco 66-67, Dave King, Andy Crawford, Steve Norton 102/F (Walkman).

Dorling Kindersley / Steve Short 147b/G, Toni Souzer 36/F, Lindsey Stock 58/F, Foodia.com 5AM Images 144b/A, alex79 140c/F, AlexB 140c/J, Martha Andrews 97tl, angelog 144t/F, angelini 54/D, Anterovium 146b/N, aquamagn 970 146b/B, Aramanda 138/M, arpaes 144t/M, Yun Arcurs 8cr 39cl (Business Woman), 42c, 140c/E, 140b/A, 140b/B, 140b/D, 140b/G, 140b/J, Shen Armstrong 147t/A, Artysthot 54/A, ArvaCsaba 142b/F, Ayra 142b/G, Kitch Bain 143/N, Baltazar 144t/M, Elaine Barker 142b/H, Galina Barskaya 138/D, Mikhail Basov 139b/B, Kai Baumann 147t/B, berys30 139b/L, Ruth Black 141/L, blondsteve 144b/C, Mark Bond 145/H, Margarita Borodina 140c/C, Andrey Bortnikov 141/M, Alexander Bryl'jaev 141/O, 143/A, Maria Brzostowska 143/K, Cardaf 60c, Christian Carlot 54/J, Cheryl Casey 144b/E, Ernst Cenjak 146b/D, Jacek Chabrazewski 58/C, ChristArt 147b/L, Thomas Christie 36/A, Cobalt 138/A, Stephen Coburn 144t/N, cretolamna 143/B, 143/R, Danicek 143/Q, danieldefotograaf 145/E, Philippe Devanne 144t/O, Lev Dolgatsjov 140t/G, António Duarte 148cr, 152cr, Sebastian Duda 145/G, Barbara Dudzińska 138/I, ELEN 100/E (Ring), Elenathewise 139b/H, Sonya Etchison 138/F, Fatman73 138/H, felinda 54/I, Inna Finochka 148tr, 152tr, fkruger 143/D, flashpics 89, Michael Filippo 143/O, fotoedgaras 100/A (Chair), Keith Frith 29cr, Marek Gaidukevic 54/E, Sergey Galushko 102/A (CD), gemenacom 141/G, grekoff 141/A, Jaroslav Grudzinski 6bl, gsteve 143/S, Christopher Hall 147t/G, Hallgerd 145/I, Hanik 142t/L, HP-Photo 145/D, hsfelix 140b/F, ia 100/F (Towels), Rafa Irusta 146b/H, Oleg Ivanov 100/C, jeayesy 144b/B, Malena und Philipp K 146c/A, kaanates 143/P, kadroff 141/S, 146b/O, Kalani 146c/F, karandaev 143/H, karuka 147t/D, Kayros Studio 141/J, Tan Kian Khoo 97b, Alexey Klementiev 147b/E, kmiragaya 147b/D, kmit 54/F, Lars Koch 147t/H, Olga Kovalenko 140c/G, Volodymyr Krasyuk 140c/L, Viktoriia Kulish 146b/I, Denys Kurbatov 145/A, Kurhan 139b/A, Rolf Langohr 36/E, leafy 146b/L, Lsantilli 143/F, Anna Lurye 141/I, Lusoimages 143/M, MarFot 33b/C, Maksim Masalski 138/C, 140c/K, mattei 140c/C, Tom McNemar 143/G, Warren Millar 147t/E, Monkey Business 142t/F, moonrun 139t/J, Paul Morley 147t/F, mr. markin 144t/A, Phuong Nguyen 138/J, Nichapa 144b/G, Mariusz Niedzwiedzki 102/E (Cassette), NilsZ 143/T, Leonid Nyshko 141/B, 141/F, Popova Olga 141/H, Lev Olkha 148tl, 152tl, Arti Om 141/N, Alexandr Ozerov 146c/B, panthesja 146c/D, philip1652 139b/D, pixelcive 6tc, Pixel Memoirs 140t/D, Pixelbliss 54/L, poco_bw 140t/H, Vadim Ponomarenko 98/D (Bike), Nikolay Pozdeev 141/R, Pumba 144t/I, QQ7 58-59, Kimberly Reinick 40b (Limo), Carlos Restrepo 146b/A, rgbspace 148bl, Karen Roth 146b/J, Rob 140b/H, robynmac 143/I, rook76 54/H, scalesy 144b/D, Marcel Schauer 84c, Ian Scott 142b/E, Brandon Seidel 40t (Flag), sherrie 146b/E, Bruce Shippee 108cl (Money), Yuri Shirokov 146b/C, shooarts 141/C, Roman Sigaev 146b/K, 147b/C, Nikolai Sorokin 100/D (Car), 146b/F, soupstock 140b/I, Alexander Spegal'skiy 142b/D, Stocksnapper 141/P, Artur Sytenko 142b/A, Ferenc Szelepcsényi 144t/J, tarasov_vl 142b/B, Nguyen Thai 100/B (TV), Theyweed Green 146b/G, Leah-Anne Thompson 139b/K, tony4urban 139t/D, TrudiDesign 139b/M, Simone van den Berg 147b/B, Vita Vanaga 146b/M, Dmitry Vereshchagin 98/B (Tent), verte 142t/E, Viktor 54/C, vlorzor 141/K, Gary Walker 145/F, William Wang 148cl, 152cl, Matka Waniatka 54/G, Mahon Wear 144b/F (Right), White Smoke 140c/B, zakaz 141/E, Serg Zastavkin 108t, Zeitung 140c/E, Mars Zemgaliete 144t/L, Zipo 40cl (Coca Cola), Ronald Grant Archive: Warner Bros & J. K. Rowling 33 (Daniel Radcliffe), Getty Images: 24tl, 24c, 24bl, 24c, AFP 29cl, 54tr, Michael Kappeler / AFP 32bl (Train), Paul Crock / AFP 33 (Venus Williams), Paolo Bruni / Stringer 33 (Usain Bolt), George Clerk 148t, FilmMagic 24cr, 75, Ghislain & Marie David de Looze 108cr (Woman Mapreading), Jörg Greuel 30-37, Jeta Productions 83bl, Jupiterimages / S. Bruce Lianon 8br, Photographer's Choice AF 39bl, Photolibrary 66t, Darren Robb 140t/A, Gregor Scazzan 10t, Mark Sato 105cl, Zubin Shroff 10t, Axel Snelley 58t, Stephen Stockler 53, Karen Su 88-89, Maria Teyera 10t.

Thinkstock Images 139b/C, Time & Life Pictures 33 (Michael Jackson), Visuals Unlimited, Inc. / Gerry Bishop 29bl, Dougal Waters 111, Chev Wilkinson 110r, Brad Wilson 105cr, 110l, WireImage 24cl, 54br; iStockphoto: AlbanyPictures 139b/F, amriphoto 102/C (Jukebox), Chris Fertnig 143/U, foodandwinephotography 58/E, Juanmonino 148c, 152c, kail9 95bl, Mleny Photography 87, George Peters 108b (Hammock), ranplett 152br, Catherine Yeulet 148br; **North Jersey Media Group:** 76b; **Pearson Education Ltd:** Alamy, Bill Brooks 144t/K, Sophie Bluy 142t/C, 144t/G, Gareth Boden 139b/E, 144t/E, 145/C, Burke Triolo Productions 143/J, Trevor Clifford 140b/C, 141/D, Image Source Ltd: www.imagesource.com 139t/A, 139t/B, 139t/C, 139t/E, 139t/F, 139t/G, 139t/H, 139t/I, 139t/K, 139t/L, 139b/N, Imagestate. Michael Duerinckx 144b/F (Left), John Fox Collection 144t/C, Rob Judges 138/L, 147b/H, Jupiterimages, Brand X, Alamy 79r, Naki Kouyioumtzis 138/G, Lord and Leverett 139b/G, MindStudio 140t/B, New Holland 144t/B, Ben Nicholson 147t/C, Nigel Riches. Image Source Ltd: www.imagesource.com 152bl, Pearson Education Asia Ltd, Coleman Yuen 84b, Photodisc 140c/H, 142b/C, Photodisc, Alan D. Carey 145/B, Photodisc, Brofsky Studio Inc. 138/B, 144t/H, Photodisc, C Squared Studios 139b/L, 143/C, 143/E, Photodisc, John A. Rizzo 54/B, 54/K, 138/K, Photodisc, Kevin Peterson 148tc, 152tc, Photodisc, Life File, Andrew Ward 58/D, Photodisc, LightWorks Studio, Don Farrell 146c/E, Photodisc, Photolink 140c/F, Photodisc, Photolink, F. Schussler 140c/A, Photodisc, Photolink, Jack Star 64b, John A. Rizzo 143/L, David Sanderson 140b/E, 141/O, 144b/J, Jules Selmes 138/E, Stockbyte, George Dwyer, Photolibrary 146c/C, Studio 8 147b/J, Tudor Photography 33b/E; **Pearson Education Ltd:** 140c/O; **Photolibrary.com:** Anne Ackermann 142t/G, Age fotostock 7cl, 11c, 83cl, 146t/b, age fotostock 7cl, 11c, 83cl, 146t/b, Asia Images Group 11r, Blend Images 73cr, Britain on View 58/A, Dallas and John Heaton 86bl, Fancy 142t/B, Fotosearch 65t, Carson Gand 14-15, Hill Street Studios 27c (Singer), Image Source 142t/H, Imagesource 23r, 73br, 80-81, Uwe Kraft 60c, Christophe Lehennaff 14tc, Lite Productions 61br, M. Stolt 108cr, Manchan Manchan 17cr, National Geographic Society 39br, 46-47, Phil O'Connor 34-35, Olive 56b, Andrew Olney 83cr, 88, PhotoAlto 140c/A, Photos India 6tr, Pictal Images 12, 84c, ingolf Pompe 86tl, Robert Preston 36/C, Radius Images 52tl, 78, Henryk Sadura 146c, Stockbroker Images 27tr (Dogs), Jochen Tack 108c (File Box), Fabian von Pater 57, Kevin Walsh 33b/A, Photoshot Holdings Limited Pool 17r, 24-25; **Press Association Images:** AP Photo / Aaron Favila 61cl, Mark Czuchra / UK Press 24cr, Yu Mok / PA Archive 27tr (Band), 27tr (Festival Crowd); **Reuters:** Brad Rickert 73r, Senger Media 33b/D, Rex Features: 24r, Bill Stevenson / Stock Connection 80cr, Bonham / Science News 98t, Mark Campbell 51br, 58c, Nak / PHMCA 78, Profiles in History 32br (Dress), Tomasz Ryzak 77, Don Spenser 106c (Delivery Bikes), Shutterstock.com Gena Andrusch 14c, AUSA 52b, Big Caber 10t, HPG Images 146c/S, Dmitry Menkov 102/D (MPS Power), Eberine Oosthuizen 146c/L, jcl 144c/F, J. S. Sakman 146c/T, Dmitry Shirokov 31, Scazzan 146c/I, B. Wilson Sporting Goods 53t (Tennis Racket), SuperStockage 108tr, 20t, 105b, 146c/H, age fotostock 20t, 105b, 146c/H, Crock 112, Design Rio 7tl, Eye Ubiquitous 105tl, 105tr, 105cl, 105br, moodboard 71t, www.imagesource.com 140c/F.

All other images © Pearson Education

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and to acknowledge their contribution to this work. If any copyright holder has been overlooked, the publisher will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements.

Speakout Starter

Speakout has been developed in association with BBC Worldwide and BBC Learning English.

Speakout is a comprehensive six-level general English course for adults that builds confidence in speaking, listening, reading and writing using authentic materials from the BBC. With its wide range of support material, it meets the diverse needs of learners in a variety of teaching situations and helps to bridge the gap between the classroom and the real world.

The real world in your classroom

Authentic DVD material from the BBC provides the springboard for meaningful speaking and writing tasks. Downloadable Video podcasts of real-life interviews provide models of authentic English. In addition, regular work on listening and speaking strategies equips students for communication in the real world.

ActiveBook

- ▶ Students' Book in digital format
- ▶ Integrated audio and video
- ▶ Video podcasts for your mobile phone



The ESU English Language Book Award recognises the best book published each year in the field of English Language Teaching.

HRH THE DUKE OF
EDINBURGH
ESU ENGLISH
LANGUAGE
BOOK AWARD 2011
Winner

'Speakout is a breath of fresh air: a novel, imaginative and contemporary approach to learning, with successfully-integrated media. The course comes with high-quality BBC DVD content and downloadable podcasts, both of which give learners content rich in authentic English and a genuine global range of subject matter to engage with.'

The ESU judging panel described Speakout as 'the best course this year', 'excellent', and 'a wonderful course'. 'A collaborative creation between Pearson and the BBC brings the best of both and makes something better.'

CEFR	
A1	Starter
A2	Elementary
B1	Pre-intermediate
B1+	Intermediate
B2	Upper Intermediate
C1	Advanced

www.pearsonELT.com/speakout

ISBN 978-1-4082-9181-8



9 781408 291818 >